BRYSON'S DICTIONARY OF TROUBLESOME WORDS

BILL BRYSON
Bryson's Dictionary of Troublesome Words

Bill Bryson
contents

Title Page

Introduction

Troublesome Words

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
Appendix: Punctuation

Bibliography and Suggested Reading

Glossary

About the Author

By Bill Bryson

Intro to Excerpt

An Excerpt from Bill Bryson’s At Home

Outro from Excerpt

Copyright Page
introduction

The physicist Richard Feynman once remarked that every time a colleague from the humanities department complained that his students couldn’t spell a common word like seize or accommodate, Feynman wanted to reply, “Then there must be something wrong with the way you spell it.”

There is something in what he said. English is a merry confusion of quirks and irregularities that often seem willfully at odds with logic and common sense. This is a language where cleave can mean to cut in half or to hold two halves together; where the simple word set has 126 meanings as a verb, 58 as a noun, and 10 as a participial adjective; where if you run fast you are moving swiftly, but if you are stuck fast you are not moving at all; where colonel, freight, once, and ache, among many thousands of others, have pronunciations that are strikingly at odds with their spellings; where some Latin plurals are treated always as singular (agenda) and some are treated always as plural (criteria) and some (data, media) are regarded by some careful users as plural and by others as singular. I could go on and on. Indeed, in the pages that follow I do.

In many ways the text contained here represents not so much a new edition of an old book as a new edition of an old author. When I put together The Penguin Dictionary of Troublesome Words (as it then was) in 1983, I was a young copy editor on the London Times, and it was a fundamental part of my job to be sensitive to and particular about points of usage. It was why they employed me, after all, and I took the responsibility seriously.

So seriously, in fact, that when I realized there were vast expanses of English usage—linguistic Serengetis—that I was not clear about at all, I wrote to a
kindly editor at Penguin Books named Donald McFarlan and impetuously suggested that there was a need for a simple, concise guide to the more confusing or problematic aspects of the language and that I was prepared to undertake it. To my astonishment and gratification, Mr. McFarlan sent me a contract and, by way of advance, a sum of money carefully gauged not to cause embarrassment or feelings of overworth. Thus armed, I set about trying to understand this wonderfully disordered thing that is the English language.

As I observed in the first edition, the book that resulted might more accurately, if less convincingly, have been called *A Guide to Everything in English Usage That the Author Wasn’t Entirely Clear About Until Quite Recently*. Nearly everything in it arose as the product of questions encountered during the course of daily newspaper work. Should it be “fewer than 10 percent of voters” or “less than 10 percent”? Does someone have “more money than her” or “than she”?

The answers to such questions are not always easily found. Seeking the guidance of colleagues, I discovered, is dangerous: raise almost any point of usage with two journalists and you will almost certainly get two confident but contradictory answers. Traditional reference works are often little more helpful, because they so frequently assume from the reader a familiarity with the intricacies of grammar that is—in my case, at any rate—generous. Because of such difficulties, many users of English continue to make usage decisions based on little more than durable superstitions and half-formed understandings. Many, for example, doggedly avoid split infinitives in the conviction that it endows their sentences with superior grammar. (It does not.) Others avoid *hopefully* as if it were actively infectious and instead write the more cumbrous “it is hoped” to satisfy an obscure point of syntax that I suspect few of them could elucidate. Too often for such people the notion of good English has less to do with expressing ideas clearly than with making words conform to some arbitrary pattern.

But at the same time, anything that helps to bring order to the engaging unruliness that is our language is, almost by definition, a good thing. Just as we all agree that clarity is better served if *cup* represents a drinking vessel and *cap* something you put on your head, so too, I would submit, the world is a fractionally better place if we agree to preserve a distinction between *its* and *it’s*, between “I lay down the law” and “I lie down to sleep,” between *imply* and *infer*, *forego* and *fordo*, *flout* and *flaunt*, *anticipate* and *expect*, and countless
others.

One of the abiding glories of English is that it has no governing authority, no group of august worthies empowered to decree how words may be spelled and deployed. We are a messy democracy, and all the more delightful for it. We spell eight as we do not because that makes sense, but because that is the way we like to spell it. When we tire of a meaning or usage or spelling—when we decide, for example, that masque would be niftier as mask—we change it, not by fiat but by consensus. The result is a language that is wonderfully fluid and accommodating, but also complex, undirected and often puzzling—in a word, troublesome.

What follows should be regarded less as a book of instruction than as a compilation of suggestions, observations, and even treasured prejudices. Never forget that no one really has the right to tell you how to organize your words. If you wish to say “between you and I” or to use fulsome in the sense of lavish, it is your privilege to do so and you can certainly find ample supporting precedents among many distinguished writers. But you may also find it useful to know that such usages are at variance with that eccentric, ever-shifting corpus known as Good English. Identifying that consensus, insofar as such a thing is possible, is the principal aim of this book.

Some 60 percent of the material is new since the original Dictionary of Troublesome Words. This is not, alas, because I am now 60 percent better informed than I was nearly twenty years ago. In fact, very nearly the reverse. I can’t begin to tell you (or at least I prefer not to tell you) how many times while reviewing the original text I found myself thinking, “I didn’t know that. Why, I’ve been making that mistake for years.” The revisions herein consist largely of elaborations on much that I had forgotten I once knew, and additions concerning matters that have come to my attention since. In an alarmingly real sense, the alternative title now could be Even More Things in English Usage That the Author Wasn’t Entirely Clear About Until Quite Recently.

The book is not—indeed, cannot be—a style guide. Whether to write email or e-mail, NATO or Nato, Vietnam or Viet Nam is, for most users, a question of preference or of house style. Only occasionally, where the weight of usage has shifted in recent years, as with the South American country Suriname (or Surinam), does the book touch on stylistic issues. Nor, except tangentially (and
perhaps just a touch idiosyncratically), does it deal with questions of pronunciation. By design the book’s scope is slightly more international than is perhaps typical. It seems to me that as the world shrinks and communications become increasingly global, there is every reason to keep our horizons broad. You might never have an occasion to check whether the Australian eminence is Ayers Rock or Ayer’s Rock or need to distinguish Magdalene College, Cambridge, from Magdalen College, Oxford, but the chances that you will are vastly greater now than they were twenty years ago, and so I have kept such entries in.

Most of the entries that follow are illustrated with questionable usages from leading publications throughout the English-speaking world, and I should point out that the frequency with which some publications are cited has less to do with the quality of their production than with my own reading habits. I have also not hesitated to cite errors committed by the authorities themselves. It is of course manifestly tactless of me to draw attention to the occasional lapses of those on whom I have so unashamedly relied for guidance. My intention in so doing is not to embarrass or challenge them but simply to show how easily such errors are made, and I trust my remarks will be taken in that light.

It is to those authorities, most especially Philip Howard, Ernest Gowers, the incomparable H. W. Fowler, and the late Theodore Bernstein of the New York Times, that I am most lastingly indebted. More immediately, I am also deeply grateful to my editors Gerald Howard and Liz Duvall for their endless tact and incisive observations. I don’t know if there is a collective noun that embraces editorial remarks, but a humbling of corrections would seem appropriate (though of course any errors that remain are my own). Finally, I wish to express devoted thanks to my dear wife, Cynthia; to my friend and agent Jed Mattes; and to the kindly and trusting Donald McFarlan, wherever he may now be.
Troublesome Words
**a, an.** Errors involving the indefinite articles *a* and *an* are almost certainly more often a consequence of haste and carelessness than of ignorance. They are especially common when numbers are involved, as here: “Cox will contribute 10 percent of the equity needed to build a $80 million cable system” (*Washington Post*). Make it *an*. Occasionally the writer and editor together fail to note how an abbreviation is pronounced: “He was assisted initially by two officers from the sheriff’s department and a FBI agent drafted in from the bureau’s Cleveland office” (*Chicago Tribune*). When the first letter of an abbreviation is pronounced as a vowel, as in *FBI*, the preceding article should be *an*, not *a*.

**Abbreviations, contractions, acronyms.** *Abbreviation* is the general term used to describe any shortened word. Contractions and acronyms are types of abbreviation. A contraction is a word that has been squeezed in the middle, so to speak, but has retained one or more of its opening and closing letters, as with *Mr.* for *Mister* and *can’t* for *cannot*. An acronym is a word formed from the initial letter or letters of a group of words, as with *radar* for *radio detecting and ranging*, and *NATO* for *North Atlantic Treaty Organization*. Abbreviations that are not pronounced as words (*IBM*, *ABC*, *NFL*) are not acronyms; they are just abbreviations.

Whether to write *NATO* or *Nato* is normally a matter of preference or house style. American publications tend to capitalize all the letters of abbreviations, even when they are pronounced as words. In Britain, generally the convention is to capitalize only the initial letter when the abbreviation is pronounced as a word and is reasonably well known. Thus most British publications would write *Aids* and *Nato* (but probably not *Seato*). For abbreviations of all types, try to avoid an appearance of clutter and intrusiveness. Rather than make repeated reference to “the IGLCO” or “NOOSCAM,” it is nearly always better to refer to the abbreviated party as “the committee,” “the institute,” or whatever other word is
appropriate.

Finally, for the benefit of travelers who may have wondered why the British so often dispense with periods on the ends of abbreviations (writing Mr, Dr, and St where Americans would write Mr., Dr., and St.), it’s helpful to know that the convention in Britain is to include a period when the abbreviation stops in the midst of a word (as with Capt. and Prof., for instance) but to leave off the period when the last letter of the abbreviation is the last letter of the full word—that is, when it is a contraction.

accessible. Not -able.

accommodate. One of the most misspelled of all words. Note -mm-.

accompanist. Not -iest.

acidulous, assiduous. Acidulous means tart or acid. Assiduous means diligent.

acolyte. Not -ite.

acoustics. As a science, the word is singular (“Acoustics was his line of work”). As a collection of properties, it is plural (“The acoustics in the auditorium were not good”).

acronyms. See ABBREVIATIONS, CONTRACTIONS, ACRONYMS.

activity. Often a sign of prolixity, as here: “The warnings followed a week of earthquake activity throughout the region” (Independent). Just make it “a week of earthquakes.”

acute, chronic. These two are sometimes confused, which is a little odd, as their meanings are sharply opposed. Chronic pertains to lingering conditions, ones that are not easily overcome. Acute refers to those that come to a sudden crisis and require immediate attention. People in the Third World may suffer from a chronic shortage of food. In a bad year, their plight may become acute.

A.D. anno Domini (Lat.), “in the year of the Lord.” A.D. should be written before the year (A.D. 25) but after the century (fourth century A.D.) and is usually set in small caps. See also ANNO DOMINI and B.C.
adage. Even the most careful users of English frequently, but unnecessarily, refer to an “old adage.” An adage is by definition old.

adapter, adaptor. The first is one who adapts (as in a book for theatrical presentation); the second is the device for making appliances work abroad and so on.

adjective pileup. Many journalists, in an otherwise commendable attempt to pack as much information as possible into a confined space, often resort to the practice of piling adjectives in front of the subject, as in this London Times headline: “Police rape claim woman in court.” Apart from questions of inelegance, such headlines can be confusing, to say the least. A hurried reader, expecting a normal subject-verb-object construction, could at first conclude that the police have raped a claim-woman in court before the implausibility of that notion makes him go back and read the headline again. Readers should never be required to retrace their steps, however short the journey. Although the practice is most common in headlines, it sometimes crops up in text, as here: “The new carburetor could result in an up to 35 percent improvement in gas mileage” (Des Moines Register). The ungainliness here could instantly be eliminated by making it “an improvement in mileage of up to 35 percent.”

administer. Not administrate.

admit to is nearly always wrong, as in these examples: “The Rev. Jesse Jackson had just admitted to fathering a child with an adoring staffer” (Baltimore Sun); “Pretoria admits to raid against Angola” (Guardian headline); “Botha admits to errors on Machel cash” (Independent headline). Delete to in each case. You admit a misdeed, you do not admit to it.

advance planning is common but always redundant. All planning must be done in advance.


affect, effect. As a verb, affect means to influence (“Smoking may affect your
health”) or to adopt a pose or manner (“She affected ignorance”). Effect as a verb means to accomplish (“The prisoners effected an escape”). As a noun, the word needed is almost always effect (as in “personal effects” or “the damaging effects of war”). Affect as a noun has a narrow psychological meaning to do with emotional states (by way of which it is related to affection).

**affinity** denotes a mutual relationship. Therefore, strictly speaking, one should not speak of someone or something having an affinity for another but should speak of an affinity with or between. When mutuality is not intended, sympathy would be a better word. But it should also be noted that a number of authorities and many dictionaries no longer insist on this distinction.

**affright.** Note -ff-.

**Afrikaans, Afrikaners.** The first is a language, the second a group of people.

**aggravate** in the sense of exasperate has been with us at least since the early seventeenth century and has been opposed by grammarians for about as long. Strictly, aggravate means to make a bad situation worse. If you walk on a broken leg, you may aggravate the injury. People can never be aggravated, only circumstances. Fowler, who called objections to the looser usage a fetish, was no doubt right when he insisted the purists were fighting a battle that had already been lost, but equally there is no real reason to use aggravate when annoy will do.

**aggression, aggressiveness.** “Aggression in U.S. pays off for Tilling Group” (Times headline). Aggression always denotes hostility, which was not intended here. The writer of the headline meant to suggest only that the company had taken a determined and enterprising approach to the American market. The word he wanted was aggressiveness, which can denote either hostility or merely boldness.

**aid and abet.** A tautological gift from the legal profession. The two words together tell us nothing that either doesn’t say on its own. The only distinction is that abet is normally reserved for contexts involving criminal intent. Thus it would be careless to speak of a benefactor abetting the construction of a church or youth club. Other redundant expressions dear to lawyers include null and void, ways and means, and without let or hindrance.
AIDS is not correctly described as a disease. It is a medical condition. The term is short for acquired immune deficiency syndrome.

**Air Line Pilots Association** for the group that looks after the interests of American commercial pilots.

**airlines.** “It is thought the company may also be in exploratory talks with another U.S. carrier, Alaskan Airlines” (*Times*). It’s *Alaska Airlines*. “It was found only a few miles from where a Swiss Air jet crashed two years ago” (*Boston Globe*). It’s *Swissair*. Perhaps because airlines so commonly merge or change their names, they are often wrongly designated in newspaper reporting. The following are among the more commonly troublesome:

- **Aer Lingus**
- **Aerolíneas Argentinas**
- **AeroMexico**
- **AeroPéru**
- **Air-India (note hyphen)**
- **AirTran Airlines (formerly ValuJet Airlines)**
- **Alaska Airlines**
- **All Nippon Airways (not -lines)**
- **Delta Air Lines (note Air Lines two words)**
- **Iberia Airlines (not Iberian)**
- **Icelandair**
- **Japan Airlines (Airlines one word, but JAL for the company’s abbreviation)**
- **KLM Royal Dutch Airlines (normally just KLM)**
- **LanChile (one word, but formerly Lan Chile, two words)**
Sabena Belgian World Airlines (normally just Sabena)

Scandinavian Airlines System (normally just SAS)

SriLankan Airlines (formerly AirLanka; note one word on SriLankan)

Swissair

United Airlines (Airlines one word, but UAL for the company’s abbreviation)

US Airways (formerly USAir, one word)

Virgin Atlantic Airways

“Alas! poor Yorick! I knew him, Horatio,” is the correct version of the quotation from Hamlet, which is often wrongly, and somewhat mysteriously, rendered as “Alas poor Yorick, I knew him well.”

albumen, albumin. Albumen is the white of an egg; albumin is a protein within the albumen.

Alfa-Romeo for the Italian make of automobile. Not Alpha-.

alias, alibi. Both words derive from the Latin root alius (meaning “other”). Alias refers to an assumed name and pertains only to names. It would be incorrect to speak of an impostor passing himself off under the alias of being a doctor.

Alibi is a much more contentious word. In legal parlance it refers to a plea by an accused person that she was elsewhere at the time she was alleged to have committed a crime. More commonly it is used to mean any excuse. Fowler called this latter usage mischievous and pretentious, and most authorities agree with him. But Bernstein, while conceding that the usage is a casualism, contends that no other word can quite convey the meaning of an excuse intended to transfer responsibility. Time will no doubt support him—many distinguished writers have used alibi in its more general, less fastidious sense—but for the moment, all that can be said is that in the sense of a general excuse, many authorities consider alibi unacceptable.
**allay, alleviate, assuage, relieve.** *Alleviate* should suggest giving temporary relief without removing the underlying cause of a problem. It is close in meaning to *ease*, a fact obviously unknown to the writer of this sentence: “It will ease the transit squeeze, but will not alleviate it” (*Chicago Tribune*). *Allay* and *assuage* both mean to put to rest or to pacify and are most often applied to fears. *Relieve* is the more general term and covers all these meanings.

**all intents and purposes** is colorless, redundant, and hackneyed. Almost any other expression would be an improvement. “He is, to all intents and purposes, king of the island” (*Mail on Sunday*) would be instantly made better by changing the central phrase to “in effect” or removing it altogether. If the phrase must be used at all, it can always be shorn of the last two words. “To all intents” says as much as “to all intents and purposes.”

**all right.** A sound case could be made for shortening *all right* to *alright*, as many informal users of English do already. Many other compounds beginning with *all* have been contracted without protest for centuries, among them already, almost, altogether, and even alone, which originally was all one. English, however, is a slow and fickle tongue, and *alright* continues to be looked on as illiterate and unacceptable, and consequently it ought never to appear in serious writing.

**All Souls College, Oxford. Not Souls’.**

**all time.** Many authorities object to this expression in constructions such as “She was almost certainly the greatest female sailor of all time” (*Daily Telegraph*) on the grounds that *all time* extends to the future as well as the past and we cannot possibly know what lies ahead. A no less pertinent consideration is that such assessments, as in the example just cited, are bound to be hopelessly subjective and therefore have no place in any measured argument. For a similar problem with futurity, see *ever*.

**allusion.** “When the speaker happened to name Mr. Gladstone, the allusion was received with loud cheers” (cited by Fowler). The word is not, as many suppose, a more impressive synonym for *reference*. When you allude to something, you do not specifically mention it but leave it to the reader to deduce the subject. Thus it would be correct to write, “In an allusion to the President, he said, ‘Some people make better oil men than politicians.’” The word is closer in meaning to
implication or suggestion.

altercation. “Three youths were injured in the altercation” (Chicago Tribune). No one suffers physical injury in an altercation. It is a heated exchange of words and nothing more.

alumnae, alumni. “Parker joined the other Wellesley alumni in a round of sustained applause from the podium” (Boston Globe). Alumni is the masculine plural for a collection of college graduates. In the context of an all-female institution, as in the example just cited, the correct word is alumnae. The singular forms are respectively alumna (feminine) and alumnus (masculine).

ambidextrous. Not -erous.

ambiguous, equivocal. Both mean vague and open to more than one interpretation. But whereas an ambiguous statement may be vague by accident or by intent, an equivocal one is calculatedly unclear.

amid, among. Among applies to things that can be separated and counted, amid to things that cannot. Rescuers might search among survivors but amid wreckage. See also BETWEEN, AMONG.

amoral, immoral. Amoral describes matters in which questions of morality do not arise or are disregarded; immoral applies to things that are evil.

Amtrak for the passenger railroad corporation. The company’s formal designation is the National Railroad Passenger Corporation, but this is almost never used, even on first reference.

and. The belief that and should not be used to begin a sentence is without foundation. And that’s all there is to it.

A thornier problem is seen here: “The group has interests in Germany, Australia, Japan and intends to expand into North America next year” (Times). This is what Fowler called a bastard enumeration and Bernstein, with more delicacy, called a series out of control. The defect is that the closing clause (“intends to expand into North America next year”) does not belong to the series that precedes it. It is a separate thought. The sentence should read, “The group has interests in Germany, Australia, and Japan, and intends to expand into North
America next year.” (Note that the inclusion of a comma after Japan helps to signal that the series has ended and a new clause is beginning.)

The same problem is seen here: “Department of Trade officials, tax and accountancy experts were to be involved at an early stage in the investigation” (Guardian). And here is being asked to do two jobs at once: to mark the end of a series and to join tax and accountancy to experts. It isn’t up to it. The sentence needs to say, “Department of Trade officials and tax and accountancy experts . . . .” The reluctance of writers to supply a second and is common but always misguided.


androgenous, androgynous. The first applies to the production of male offspring; the second means having both male and female characteristics.

and which. “The rights issue, the largest so far this year and which was not unexpected, will be used to fund expansion plans” (Times). Almost always and which should be preceded by a parallel which. The sentence above would be unexceptionable, and would read more smoothly, if it were changed to “The rights issue, which was the largest so far this year and which was not unexpected . . . .” Occasionally the need for euphony may excuse the absence of the first which, but such instances are rare; usually the omission is no more than a sign of slipshod writing. The stricture applies equally to such constructions as and that, and who, but which, and but who. See also THAT, WHICH.

anno Domini (capital D only). The term is Latin for “the year of the Lord.” See also A.D.

another. “Some 400 workers were laid off at the Liverpool factory and another 150 in Bristol” (Daily Telegraph). Strictly speaking, another should be used to equate two things of equal size and type. In this instance it would be correct only if 400 workers were being laid off in Bristol also. It would be better to write “and 150 more [or others] in Bristol.”

antecedence, antecedents. Antecedence means precedence; antecedents are ancestors or other things that have gone before.
**antennae, antennas.** Either is correct as the plural of *antenna*, but generally *antennae* is preferred for living organisms (“a beetle’s antennae”) and *antennas* for manmade objects (“radio antennas made possible the discovery of pulsars”).

**anticipate.** To anticipate something is to look ahead to it and prepare for it, not to make a reasonable estimate, as is often thought. A tennis player who anticipates his opponent’s next shot doesn’t just guess where it is going to go; he is there to meet it.

**anxious.** Since *anxious* comes from *anxiety*, it should contain some connotation of being worried or fearful and not merely eager or expectant. You may be anxious to put some unpleasant task behind you, but unless you have some personal stake in it, you won’t be anxious to see a new play.

**any.** A tricky word at times, even for the experts: “This paper isn’t very good, but neither is any of the others in this miserable subject” (Philip Howard, *The State of the Language*). A simple and useful principle is always to make the verb correspond to the complement. Thus “neither is any other” or “neither are any of the others.”

**anybody, anyone, anything, anyway, anywhere.** *Anything* and *anywhere* are always one word. The others are one word except when the emphasis is on the second element (e.g., “He received three job offers, but any one would have suited him”).

*Anybody* and *anyone* are singular and should be followed by singular pronouns and verbs. A common fault—so common, in fact, that some no longer consider it a fault—is seen here: “Anyone can relax, so long as they don’t care whether they or anyone else ever actually gets anything done” (*Observer*). So long as they gets anything done? The problem, clearly, is that a plural pronoun (*they*) is being attached to a singular verb (*gets*). Such constructions may in fact be fully defensible, at least some of the time, though you should at least know why you are breaking a rule when you break it. For a full discussion, see NUMBER, 4.

**Apennines** for the Italian mountain range. Note -nn- in middle.

**appendices, appendixes.** Either is correct.
**appraise, apprise.** “No decision is likely, he said, until they had been appraised of the damage” (*Sunday Times*). The word wanted here was **apprise**, which means to inform. **Appraise** means to assess or evaluate. An insurance assessor appraises damage and apprises owners.

**appreciate** has a slightly more specific meaning than writers sometimes give it. If you appreciate something, you value it (“I appreciate your concern”) or you understand it sympathetically (“I appreciate your predicament”). But when there is no sense of sympathy or value (as in “I appreciate what you are saying, but I don’t agree with it”), **understand or recognize** or the like would be better.

**approximate** means “near to,” so **very approximate** ought to mean “very near to.” Yet when most people speak of a very approximate estimate, they mean a very tentative one, not a very close one. Gowers, in *The Complete Plain Words*, roundly criticized the usage as loose and misleading, but Fowler classed it among his “sturdy indefensibles”—words and phrases that are clearly illogical, and perhaps even lamentable, but now so firmly entrenched that objections become pointless. In this, I believe, Fowler was right.

Where the authorities do find common ground is in the belief that **approximate** and **approximate to** are cumbersome and nearly always better replaced by something shorter. No need to write “We were approximately twelve miles from home” when you could make it “about” or “almost” or “nearly.”

**a priori, prima facie.** Both generally refer to evidence and thus are sometimes confused. **Prima facie** means “at first sight” or “on the surface of it” and refers to matters in which not all of the evidence has been collected but such evidence as there is points to certain conclusions. **A priori** refers to conclusions drawn from assumptions rather than experience.

**Aran Island** and **Aran Islands** (Ireland) but **Isle of Arran** (Scotland). The sweater is spelled **Aran**.

**arbitrate, mediate.** The functions of these two words differ more than is sometimes recognized. Arbitrators are like judges in that they are appointed to hear evidence and then to make a decision. Mediators are more like negotiators in that they shuttle between opposing sides trying to work out a compromise or settlement. They do not make judgments.
Difficulties sometimes also arise in distinguishing between an arbitrator and an arbiter. Whereas an arbitrator is appointed, an arbiter is someone whose opinions are valued but who holds no vested authority. Fowler summed up the distinction neatly: “An arbiter acts arbitrarily; an arbitrator must not.”

**aroma** does not apply to any smell, only to pleasant ones. Thus “the pungent aroma of a cattleyard” (*Washington Post*) is wrong.

**artifact, artefact.** The first spelling is generally preferred, but either is correct. In either case, an artifact is something shaped by human hands and not merely any very old object, as was apparently thought here: “The team found bones and other artifacts at the site” (*Guardian*). Bones are not artifacts. The word is related to *artifice, artificial, and artisan*, all of which imply a human contribution.

**as . . . as.** “A government study concludes that for trips of five hundred miles or less . . . automotive travel is as fast or faster than air travel, door to door” (George Will, syndicated columnist). The problem here is what is termed an incomplete alternative comparison. If we remove “or faster” from the sentence, the problem becomes immediately evident: “A government study concludes that for trips of five hundred miles or less . . . automotive travel is as fast than air travel, door to door.” The writer has left the “as fast” phrase dangling uncompleted. The sentence should say “as fast as or faster than air travel.”

**as far as.** “As far as next season, it is too early to make forecasts” (*Baltimore Sun*). The error here has been exercising authorities since at least Fowler’s heyday and shows no sign of abating, either as a problem or as something that exercises authorities. The trouble is that “as far as” serves as a conjunction and as such requires a following verb. The solution is either to remove the conjunction (“As for next season, it is too early to make forecasts”) or to supply the needed verb (“As far as next season goes, it is too early to make forecasts”).

**assume, presume.** The two words are often so close in meaning as to be indistinguishable, but in some contexts they do allow a fine distinction to be made. *Assume*, in the sense of “to suppose,” normally means to put forth a realistic hypothesis, something that can be taken as probable (“I assume we will arrive by midnight”). *Presume* has more of an air of sticking one’s neck out, of making an assertion that may be arguable or wrong (“I presume we have met
before”). But in most instances the two words can be used interchangeably.

as to whether. Whether alone is sufficient.

attain. “The uncomfortable debt level attained at the end of the financial year has now been eased” (Times). Attain, like achieve and accomplish, suggests the reaching of a desired goal—hardly the sense intended here. It would have been better to change the word (to prevailing, for example) or to delete it.

auger, augur. “The results do not auger well for the President in the forthcoming midterm election” (Guardian). Wrong. Auger is not a verb; it is a drilling tool. To foretell or betoken, the sense intended in the example, is to augur, with a u. The two words are not related.

auspicious does not mean simply special or memorable. It means propitious, promising, of good omen.

Australia. “Our route took us across three big Australian states—Queensland, New South Wales, and Victoria—and one little one: the Australian Capital Territory” (Boston Globe). Australia is divided into states and territories, which should not be confused, as they are in the example. The Australian Capital Territory is a federal zone carved out of the states of Victoria and New South Wales to be the seat of the national capital; it is roughly analogous to the District of Columbia in the United States. A much larger chunk of northern and central Australia is occupied by the Northern Territory, which also lacks statehood. Another fairly common error is seen here: “For several years, he worked as a mining engineer in Kalgoorlie, in western Australia” (Minneapolis Star). Western Australia is a state and thus should be capitalized (as should the neighboring state of South Australia). But perhaps the most common, and certainly the most regrettable, geographical error of all with Australia is seen here: “. . . and nowhere on earth will you find a more perfect harbor than in Australia’s capital, Sydney” (Newsday). Australia’s capital is in fact Canberra. Finally, and entirely incidentally, it is perhaps worth noting that Aussie, the diminutive term for an Australian, should be pronounced “Ozzie,” not “Ossie.”

autarchy, autarky. The first means absolute power, an autocracy; the second denotes self-sufficiency. Some style books—The Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors and The Economist Pocket Style Book, for instance—are at pains to
point out the distinction, and it is worth noting that the two words do spring from
different Greek roots. But the same books usually fail to observe that neither
word is comfortably understood by most general readers, and that in almost
every instance their English synonyms would bring an improvement in
comprehension, if not in elegance.

**autobahn**  (Ger.) express superhighway. The plural is **autobahns** or
**Autobahnen**.

**autostrada**  (It.) express motorway. The plural is **autostrade**.

**auxiliary**.  Not -ll-.

**avant-garde**.  Note hyphen.

**avenge, revenge**.  Generally, *avenge* indicates the settling of a score or the
redressing of an injustice. It is more dispassionate than *revenge*, which indicates
retaliation taken largely for the sake of personal satisfaction.

**average**.  “The average wage in Australia is now about £150 a week, though
many people earn much more”  (*Times*). And many earn much less. That is what
makes £150 the average. When expressing an average figure, it is generally
unnecessary, and sometimes fatuous, to elaborate on its exceptions.

**avocado**, pl. **avocados**.

**a while, awhile**.  To write “for awhile” is wrong because the idea of *for* is
implicit in *awhile*. Write either “I will stay here for a while” (two words) or “I
will stay here awhile” (one word).

**awoke, awaked, awakened**.  Two common problems are worth noting:

1. *Awoken*, though much used, is generally considered not standard. Thus this
sentence from an Agatha Christie novel (cited by Partridge) is wrong: “I was
awoken by that rather flashy young woman.” Make it *awakened*.

2. As a past participle, *awaked* is preferable to *awoke*. Thus, “He had awaked
at midnight” and not “He had awoke at midnight.” But if ever in doubt about the
past tense, you will never be wrong if you use *awakened*. 
axel, axle. An axel is a jump in ice skating; an axle is a rod connecting two wheels.

Ayers Rock (no apostrophe) for the Australian eminence. However, the formal name now is Uluru, which see.
bacteria. “Each bacteria is surrounded by an outer coat that contains a poisonous chemical called an endotoxin” (Baltimore Sun). Bacteria is plural. The singular is bacterium, so the sentence needs to say either “Each bacterium is” or “The bacteria are.” A second occasional error concerning bacteria is to confuse them with viruses, which are not at all the same things. Bacteria are single-celled organisms with the ability to reproduce independently. Viruses are much smaller and capable of reproducing only after invading a living cell; they are not independent living organisms. They also cause different diseases from bacteria, a point that can often be germane in texts.

bail, bale. Bail is a prisoner’s bond, the pieces that rest atop the stumps in cricket, and the act of scooping water. Bale is a bundle, as of cotton or hay. You bail out a boat and out of an aircraft. A malicious person wears a baleful expression.

bait, bate. “Robin’s exploits were listened to with baited breath” (Mail on Sunday). Unless Robin’s listeners were hoping to catch fish, their breath was bated. The word is a cousin of abated.

balk, baulk. Either spelling is correct, but the second is primarily British.

banzai, bonsai. The first is a Japanese war cry; the second is a type of Japanese gardening involving miniature trees.

barbaric, barbarous. Barbaric, properly used, emphasizes crudity and a lack of civilizing influence. A sharpened stick might be considered a barbaric implement of war. Barbarous stresses cruelty and harshness and usually contains at least a hint of moral condemnation, as in “barbarous ignorance” and “barbarous treatment.”
barbecue is the only acceptable spelling in serious writing. Any journalist or other formal user of English who believes that the word is spelled barbeque or, worse still, bar-b-q, is not ready for unsupervised employment.

barrier. “BTR’s profits this week went through the £1bn pre-tax profits barrier” (Independent). Even in the broadest figurative sense, a barrier should suggest some kind of obstacle or impediment, and clearly there is nothing stopping any company from piling up any level of profit. If the urge to employ a metaphor is irresistible, try milestone.

basically. The trouble with this word, basically, is that it is almost always unnecessary.

basis. More often than not, a reliable indicator of wordiness, as here: “Det. Chief Supt. Peter Topping . . . said he would review the search on a day-to-day basis” (Independent). Why not make it “would review the search daily” and save five words?

bathos. From the Greek bathus, meaning “deep,” bathos can be used to indicate the lowest point or nadir, or triteness and insincerity. But its usual use is in describing an abrupt descent from an elevated position to the commonplace. It is not the opposite of pathos, which is to do with feelings of pity or sympathy.

B.C. always goes after the year (e.g., 42 B.C.) and is usually set in small caps. Some texts employ B.C.E. (for “Before Christian Era” or “Before Common Era”) as a more secular alternative, but the practice shows no sign yet of becoming widespread.

be (with a participle). Almost always a wordy way of getting your point across, as here: “He will be joining the board of directors in March” (Times). Quicker to say, “He will join the board of directors in March.”

before, prior to. There is no difference between these two except length and a certain inescapable affectedness on the part of prior to. To paraphrase Bernstein, if you would use posterior to instead of after, then by all means use prior to instead of before.

begging the question. Strictly speaking, to beg a question is to present as proof
something that itself needs proving. Bernstein cites as an example the sentence “Parallel lines will never meet because they are parallel.” The second half of the sentence only seems to support the first; it doesn’t offer actual proof. The problem is that there is little need for a phrase that describes a specific logical fallacy, whereas there is an evident need for a phrase that describes a question that has not been adequately dealt with. So for many years people have used begging the question in a variety of other senses—to invite a question, to evade a question, to confuse an issue—to the extent that many users, perhaps most, are unaware of the phrase’s original meaning in logic. Those who wish to stay on the side of tradition doubtless have virtue in their corner, but the weight of usage is clearly against them, and I am inclined to think that insisting absolutely on the traditional sense is more a favor to pedantry than to clarity.

**behoove** (British behave). An archaic word, but still sometimes a useful one. Two points need to be made:

1. The word means necessary or contingent but is sometimes wrongly used for becomes, particularly with the adverb ill, as in “It ill behooves any man responsible for policy to think how best to make political propaganda” (cited by Gowers).

2. It should be used only impassively and with the subject it. “The circumstances behoove us to take action” is wrong. Make it “It behooves us in the circumstances to take action.”

**beleaguered.** Not -ured.

**belles-lettres** describes writing that has a literary or esthetic, as opposed to purely informational, value. The word is usually treated as a plural but may be used as a singular. For reasons unconnected to logic, the hyphen is lost and the word itself contracted in the related terms belletrist, belletism, and belletritic.
bellwether. Not -weather. Wether is an Old English word for a castrated sheep. A bellwether is a sheep that has a bell hung from its neck, by which means it leads the flock from one pasture to another. In general use, it signifies something that leads or shows the way. A bellwether stock is one that is customarily at the head of the pack.

beluga is a type of sturgeon, not a manufacturer or producer of caviar, as is sometimes thought, so the word should not be capitalized (except of course at the start of a sentence).

benzene, benzine. Both are liquid hydrocarbons commonly used as solvents. Benzene is primarily associated with the production of plastics, while benzine most often is encountered as a solvent used in dry-cleaning establishments. In all events, they are different substances and not merely alternative spellings of a single compound.

bereft. “Many children leave school altogether bereft of mathematical skills” (Times, cited by Kingsley Amis in *The State of the Language*). To be bereft of something is not to lack it but to be dispossessed of it. A spinster is not bereft of a husband, but a widow is (the word is the past participle of bereave).

besides means also or in addition to, not alternatively. Partridge cites this incorrect use: “The wound must have been made by something besides the handle of the gear-lever.” Make it “other than.”

besiege. Not -ei-.

between, among. A few authorities continue to insist that *between* applies to two things only and *among* to more than two, so that we should speak of dividing some money between the two of us but among the four of us. That is useful advice as far as it goes, but it doesn’t always go very far. It would be absurd, for instance, to say that Chicago is among New York, Los Angeles, and Houston. More logically, *between* should be applied to reciprocal arrangements (a treaty between the United States, the United Kingdom, and Canada) and *among* to collective arrangements (trade talks among the members of the European Union).

A separate common problem with *between* is seen here: “He said the new
salaries were between 30 to 40 percent more than the average paid by other retailers” (Independent). Something can only be between one thing and another. Thus you should say either “between 30 and 40 percent” or “from 30 to 40 percent.”

**between you and I.** John Simon called this “a grammatical error of unsurpassable grossness.” It is perhaps enough to say that it is very common and it is always wrong. The rule is that the object of a preposition should always be in the accusative. More simply, we don’t say “between you and I” for the same reason that we don’t say “give that book to I” or “as Tom was saying to she only yesterday.” A similar gaffe is seen here: “He leaves behind 79 astronauts, many young enough to be the children of he and the others” (Daily Mail). Make it “of him.”

**Big Ben,** strictly speaking, is not the famous clock on the Houses of Parliament in London but just the great hour bell, so a passing visitor will hear Big Ben but never see it. The formal name of the clock, for what it is worth, is the clock on St. Stephen’s Tower on the Palace of Westminster.

**bimonthly, biweekly,** and similar designations are almost always ambiguous. It is far better to say “every two months,” “twice a month,” etc., as appropriate.

**blatant, flagrant.** The words are not quite synonymous. Something that is blatant is glaringly obvious and contrived (“a blatant lie”) or willfully obnoxious (“blatant commercialization”) or both. Something that is flagrant is shocking and reprehensible (“a flagrant miscarriage of justice”). If I tell you that I regularly travel to the moon, that is a blatant lie, not a flagrant one. If you set fire to my house, that is a flagrant act, not a blatant one.

**blazon.** “[She] blazoned a trail in the fashion world which others were quick to follow” (Sunday Times). Trails are blazed. To blazon means to display or proclaim in an ostentatious manner.

**blueprint** as a metaphor for a design or plan is much overworked. If the temptation to use it is overwhelming, at least remember that a blueprint is a completed plan, not a preliminary one.

**bon vivant, bon viveur.** The first is a person who enjoys good food, the second
a person who lives well.

**born, borne.** Both are past participles of the verb *bear*, but by convention they are used in slightly different ways. *Born* is limited to the idea of birth (“He was born in December”). *Borne* is used for the sense of supporting or tolerating (“She has borne the burden with dignity”), but is also used to refer to giving birth in active constructions (“She has borne three children”) and in passive constructions followed by *by* (“The three children borne by her . . .”).

**both.** Three small problems to note:

1. *Both* should not be used to describe more than two things. Partridge cites a passage in which a woman is said to have “a shrewd common sense . . . both in speech, deed, and dress.” Delete *both*.

2. Sometimes it appears superfluously: “. . . and they both went to the same school, Charterhouse” (*Observer*). Either delete *both* or make it “they both went to Charterhouse.”

3. Sometimes it is misused for *each*. To say that there is a supermarket on both sides of the street suggests that the supermarket is somehow straddling the road. Say either that there is a supermarket on each side of the street or that there are supermarkets on both sides. See also *each*.

**both . . . and.** “He was both deaf to argument and entreaty” (cited by Gowers). The rule involved here is that of correlative conjunctions, which states that in a sentence of this type, *both* and *and* should link grammatically similar entities. If *both* is followed immediately by a verb, *and* should also be followed immediately by a verb. If *both* immediately precedes a noun, then so should *and*. In the example above, however, both is followed by an adjective (*deaf*) and *and* by a noun (*entreaty*). The sentence needs to be recast, either as “He was deaf to both argument [noun] and entreaty [noun]” or as “He was deaf both to argument [preposition and noun] and to entreaty [preposition and noun].”

The rule holds true equally for other such pairs: *not only . . . but also, either . . . or*, and *neither . . . nor*.

**bottleneck,** as Gowers notes, is a useful, if sometimes overused, metaphor to
indicate a point of constriction. But it should not be forgotten that it is a metaphor and therefore capable of cracking when put under too much pressure. To speak, for instance, of “a worldwide bottleneck” or “a growing bottleneck” sounds a note of absurdity. Bottlenecks, even figurative ones, don’t grow, and they don’t encompass the earth.

**bouillabaisse.**  Not -illi-.

**bravado** should not be confused with **bravery**. It is a swaggering or boastful display of boldness, often adopted to disguise an underlying timidity. It is, in short, a false bravery, and there is nothing courageous about it.

**breach, breech.** Frequently confused. **Breach** describes an infraction or a gap. It should always suggest **break**, a word to which it is related. **Breech** applies to the rear or lower portion of things. The main expressions are **breach of faith** (or **promise**), **breech delivery**, **breeches buoy**, **breechcloth**, and **breech-loading gun**.

**Britannia, Britannic, but Brittany** for the region (formerly a province) of France. The song is “Rule, Britannia,” with a comma.

**British Guiana** is the former name of the South American country now known as Guyana (see **GUIANA, GUYANA**).

**BSE** is short for bovine spongiform encephalopathy. It is more commonly known as mad cow disease.

**buenos dias** (for **good day** or **hello** in Spanish), but **buenas** (not -os) **noches** (**good night**) and **buenas tardes** (**good afternoon**).

**buffalo.** The plural can be either **buffalo** or **buffaloes**.

**buoy.** Though this book does not generally address matters of pronunciation, I cannot resist pointing out that the increasing tendency to pronounce this word “boo-ee” is mistaken and misguided. Unless you would say “boo-ee-ant” for **buoyant**, please return to pronouncing it “boy.”

**burgeon** does not mean merely to expand or thrive. It means to bud or sprout, to come into being. For something to burgeon, it must be new. Thus it would be correct to talk about the burgeoning talent of a precocious youth, but to write
“the ever-burgeoning population of Cairo” (Daily Telegraph) is wrong. Cairo’s population has been growing for centuries, and nothing, in any case, is ever-burgeoning.

**Burma, Myanmar.** The first is the former official name of the southeast Asian nation and the one now preferred by most publications and other informed users outside Burma. Myanmar was for a time used by many publications, but now its use is confined mostly to the country’s government and institutions under its influence.

*but* used negatively after a pronoun presents a problem that has confounded careful users for generations. Do you say, “Everyone but him had arrived” or “Everyone but he had arrived”? The authorities themselves are divided.

Some regard *but* as a preposition and put the pronoun in the accusative—i.e., *me, her, him,* or *them.* So just as we say, “Give it to her” or “between you and me,” we should say, “Everyone but him had arrived.”

Others argue that *but* is a conjunction and that the pronoun should be nominative (*I, she, he,* or *they*), as if the sentence were saying, “Everyone had arrived, but he had not.”

The answer perhaps is to regard *but* sometimes as a conjunction and sometimes as a preposition. Two rough rules should help.

1. If the pronoun appears at the end of the sentence, you can always use the accusative and be on firm ground. Thus, “Nobody knew but her”; “Everyone had eaten but him.”

2. When the pronoun appears earlier in the sentence, it is almost always better to put it in the nominative, as in “No one but he had seen it.” The one exception is when the pronoun is influenced by a preceding preposition, but such constructions are relatively rare and often clumsy. Two examples might be “Between no one but them was there any bitterness” and “To everyone but him life was a mystery.” See also THAN, 3.
Caesarean, not -ian, remains the preferred spelling for the form of childbirth properly known as a caesarean section. References to Roman emperors titled Caesar should be similarly spelled but capitalized.

Caius, the Cambridge college, is formally Gonville and Caius College. Caius is pronounced “keys.”

calligraphy. “Both ransom notes have been forwarded to calligraphy experts in Rome” (Daily Mail). The writer meant graphologists or graphology experts. Calligraphy is an art.

Caltech (one word) is the common name for the California Institute of Technology, in Pasadena.

camellia for the flower. Not camelia.

can, may. Can applies to what is possible and may to what is permissible. You can drive your car the wrong way down a one-way street, but you may not. Despite the simplicity of the rule, errors are common, even among experts. Here is William Safire writing in the New York Times on the pronunciation of junta: “The worst mistake is to mix languages. You cannot say ‘joonta’ and you cannot say ‘hunta.’ ” But you can and quite easily. What Mr. Safire meant was that you may not or should not or ought not.

cannot help but is an increasingly common construction and perhaps now may be said to carry the weight of idiom, but it is also unnecessarily wordy and a little irregular. “You cannot help but notice what a bad name deregulation has with voters” (Economist) would be better (or at least more conventionally phrased) as either “You cannot help notice” or “You cannot but notice.”
canvas, canvass. The first is the fabric; the second is a verb meaning to solicit, especially for votes.

capital, capitol. Capitol always applies to a building, usually the place where legislatures gather in the United States. It is always capitalized when referring to the domed building in Washington, D.C., housing the U.S. Congress. In all other senses, capital is the invariable spelling.

carabinieri, not cari-, for the Italian security force roughly equivalent to the French gendarmerie. Like gendarmes, carabinieri are soldiers employed in police duties. They are separate from, and not to be confused with, the state police (polizia statale in Italian), who also deal with criminal matters. Carabinieri is a plural; a single member of the force is a carabiniere. See also GENDARMES.

carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide. Carbon dioxide is the gas we exhale when we breathe; carbon monoxide is the highly poisonous gas associated with car exhausts.

cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers. Cardinal numbers are those that denote size but not rank: one, two, three, etc. Ordinal numbers are those that denote position: first, second, third, etc.

careen, career. Occasionally confused when describing runaway vehicles and the like. Careen should convey the idea of swaying or tilting dangerously. If all you mean is uncontrolled movement, use career.

caret, not carat, for the insertion mark (^) associated with proofreading.

Catharine’s, Catherine’s. See ST. CATHERINE’S COLLEGE.

ceiling, floor. Ceiling used figuratively in the sense of an upper limit is a handy word, but like many other handy words, it is apt to be overused. When you do employ it figuratively, you should never forget that its literal meaning is always lurking in the background, ready to spring forward and make an embarrassment of your metaphor, as in this memorable headline from the Daily Gulf Times: “Oil ministers want to stick to ceiling.”

Floor in the sense of a lower limit is, of course, equally likely to result in
incongruities. Occasionally the two words get mixed together, as in this perplexing sentence cited by both Howard and Fowler: “The effect of this announcement is that the total figure of £410 million can be regarded as a floor as well as a ceiling.” See also TARGET.

**celebrant, celebrator.** “All this is music to the ears of James Bond fan club members . . . and to other celebrants who descend on New Orleans each November 11” (New York Times). Celebrants take part in religious ceremonies. Those who gather for purposes of revelry are celebrators.

**celibacy.** “He claimed he had remained celibate throughout the four-year marriage” (Daily Telegraph). Celibacy does not, as is generally supposed, indicate abstinence from sexual relations. It means only to be unmarried, particularly as a result of a religious vow. A married man cannot be celibate, but he can be chaste.

**cement, concrete.** The two are not interchangeable. Cement is a constituent of concrete, which also contains sand, gravel, and crushed rock.

**cemetery.** Not -ary.

**center around.** “Their argument centers around the Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Act” (Times). Center indicates a point, and a point cannot encircle anything. Make it “center on” or “revolve around.”

**Centers for Disease Control and Prevention** is the full name of the U.S. institution that deals with matters of public health. Note the plural, “Centers.”

**centrifugal/centripetal force.** Centrifugal force pulls away from; centripetal force draws toward.

**chafe, chaff.** The one may lead to the other, but their meanings are distinct. To chafe means to make sore or worn by rubbing (or, figuratively, to annoy or irritate). To chaff means to tease good-naturedly. A person who is excessively chaffed is likely to grow chafed.

**chamois.** The plural is also chamois, for both the antelope and the cloth for wiping cars.
chilblain. Not chill-.

children’s is the only possible spelling of the possessive form of children.

chord, cord. A chord is a group of musical notes or a type of arc in geometry; a cord is a length of rope or similar material of twisted strands, or a stack of wood. See also VOCAL CORDS.

Christ Church, Christchurch. Christ Church is the spelling and full name of the Oxford college (not Christ Church College). The communities in New Zealand and England are Christchurch.

CinemaScope is the correct spelling for the wide-screen film system.

circumstances, in the and under the. A useful distinction can be drawn between the two. In the circumstances should indicate merely that a situation exists: “In the circumstances, I began to feel worried.” Under the circumstances should denote a situation in which action is necessitated or inhibited: “Under the circumstances, I had no choice but to leave.”

City of London, city of London. They are separate things. The City of London, often referred to simply as “the City,” is an area of 677 acres, or about a square mile, in the east-central part of greater London. Historically and administratively it is quite separate from the great metropolis to which it gave its name. Occasionally this can be a source of confusion—for instance, when distinguishing between investigations of the London police and the City of London police. The City is London’s financial district and is sometimes informally referred to as the Square Mile.

claim. Properly, to claim means to demand recognition of a right. You claim something that you wish to call your own—an inheritance, a lost possession, a piece of land. But increasingly it is used in the sense of assert or contend, as here: “They claim that no one will be misled by the advertisement” (Boston Globe).

For years authorities decried this looser usage, insisting that we replace claim in such constructions with assert, declare, maintain, contend, or some other less objectionable verb, and for years hardly anyone heeded them. The battle, I think,
is now over. Even Fowler, who disliked the looser usage, eventually conceded that “there is no doubt a vigor about claim—a pugnacity almost—that makes such words [as assert, etc.] seem tame by comparison.”

So use the word freely if you wish, but bear in mind that there are occasions when claim is ill advised, as in this headline from a newspaper in Hawaii (cited by Fowler): “Oahu barmaid claims rape.” The imputation seems to be that the unfortunate woman has either committed a rape or has taken one as an entitlement. Whichever, the choice of word is regrettably, to say the very least.

clichés. “A week may be a long time in politics. But it’s a light year in the global economy” (Observer); “Lawyers were last night considering seeking an injunction for the book, which was selling like hot cakes in London bookshops over the weekend” (Independent). Clichés are sometimes the most economical way of expressing a complicated notion (“to hang by a thread,” “the tip of the iceberg,” “to point the finger”), but more often they are simply a sign of inert and unthinking writing and editing. It is not too much to say that in serious newspapers, no story should begin by noting that a week is a long time in politics and nothing should ever sell like hot cakes, even hot cakes. (For a separate problem with the first example above, see LIGHT YEAR.)

climactic, climatic, climacteric. Climactic means appearing at a climax (“the climactic scene in a movie”); climatic means having to do with climate and weather (“the climatic conditions of the Brazilian rain forest”); climacteric is a noun signifying a time of important change and is most commonly applied to the menopause.

climb up, climb down. Climb down, as purists sometimes point out, is a patent contradiction. But there you are. Idiom has embraced it, as it has many other patent absurdities, and there is no gainsaying it now. Climb up, in contrast, is always redundant when climb is used transitively, which is to say most of the time. An exceptional intransitive use of climb would be “After each descent, we rested for a while before climbing up again.” But in a sentence such as “He climbed up the ladder,” the up does nothing but take up space. See also PHRASAL VERBS and UP.

close proximity is inescapably tautological. Make it “near” or “close to.” See also SCRUTINY, SCRUTINIZE.
coelacanth for the ocean fish famed in scientific circles for its archaic qualities. Pronounced “SEE-luh-kanth.”

coequal. “In almost every other regard the two are coequal” (Guardian). A generally fatuous term. Co- adds nothing to equal that equal doesn’t already say alone.

cognomen applies only to a person’s surname, not to his or her full name or given names. Except jocularly, it is almost always better avoided.

cognoscenti, meaning people who are especially well informed or of elevated taste, is plural. For a single well-informed person, the word is cognoscente.

coliseum, Colosseum. The first applies to any large amphitheater; the second describes a particular amphitheater in Rome.

collapsible. Not -able.

collectives. Deciding whether to treat nouns of multitude—words like majority, flock, variety, group, and crowd—as singulars or plurals is entirely a matter of the sense you intend to convey. Although some authorities have tried to fix rules, such undertakings are almost always futile. On the whole, Americans lean to the singular and Britons to the plural, often in ways that would strike the others as absurd (compare the American “The couple was married in March” with the British “England are to play Hungary in their next match”). A common fault is to flounder about between singular and plural. Even Samuel Johnson stumbled when he wrote that he knew of no nation “that has preserved their words and phrases from mutability.” Clearly the italicized words should be either singular both times or plural both times. See also NUMBER and TOTAL.

collide, collision. “A motorcyclist died after colliding with a tree, whereupon a demonstration by grieving motards turned into a revenge mission” (New Yorker). Collisions can occur only when two or more moving objects come together. If a vehicle runs into a stationary object, it is not a collision.

collusion. “They have been working in collusion on the experiments for almost four years” (Guardian). Let us hope, for the sake of the Guardian, that the people in question read another newspaper that day, for collusion means to work
together for ends that are fraudulent or underhanded. In the example above, describing the work of two scientists, the word wanted was *cooperation* or *collaboration*.

**Colombia** is the name of the South American country, and it is misspelled shamefully often, as here: “Next is a piece about rebels in Columbia” (*Boston Globe*). The problem arises because the man known in his native Italy as Cristoforo Colombo became in English Christopher Columbus. Thus words derived from his name in English—Columbia University, the District of Columbia, British Columbia—carry a *u*, but those originated by speakers of Romance languages are spelled with an *o* in the second syllable. In all events, misspelling a country’s name is about as inexcusable a mistake as a journalist can make.

**comic, comical.** “There was a comic side to the tragedy” (*Times*). Something that is comic is intended to be funny. Something that is comical is funny whether or not that was the intention. Since tragedies are never intentionally amusing, the word wanted here was *comical*.

**commence.** “Work on the project is scheduled to commence in June” (*Financial Times*). An unnecessary genteelism. What’s wrong with *begin*?

**comparatively.** “Comparatively little progress was made in the talks yesterday” (*Guardian*). Compared with what? *Comparatively* should be reserved for occasions when a comparison is being expressed or at least clearly implied. If all you mean is *fairly* or *only a little*, choose another word. See also *relatively*.

**compare to, compare with.** These two can be usefully distinguished. *Compare to* should be used to liken things, *compare with* to consider their similarities or differences. “She compared London to New York” means that she felt London to be similar to New York. “She compared London with New York” means that she assessed the two cities’ relative merits. *Compare to* most often appears in figurative senses, as in “Shall I compare thee to a summer’s day?” So unless you are writing poetry or love letters, *compare with* is usually the expression you want.

A separate problem sometimes arises when writers try to compare incomparables. Fowler cites this example: “Dryden’s prose . . . loses nothing of
its value by being compared with his contemporaries.” The writer has inadvertently compared prose with people when he meant to compare prose with prose. It should be “with that of his contemporaries.”

**compatriot** for a fellow countryman. Not to be confused, in meaning or spelling, with *expatriate*, for someone who has taken up residence in a new land.

**compel, impel.** Both words imply the application of a force leading to some form of action, but they are not quite synonymous. *Compel* is the stronger of the two and, like its cousin *compulsion*, suggests action undertaken as a result of coercion or irresistible pressure: “The man’s bullying tactics compelled us to flee.” *Impel* is closer in meaning to *encourage* and means to urge forward: “The audience’s ovation impelled me to speak at greater length than I had intended.” If you are compelled to do something, you have no choice. If you are impelled, an element of willingness is possible.

**compendium.** No doubt because of the similarity in sound to *comprehensive*, the word is often taken to mean vast and all-embracing. In fact, a compendium is a succinct summary or abridgment. Size has nothing to do with it. It can be as large as *The Oxford English Dictionary* or as small as a memorandum. The important thing is that it provides a complete summary in a brief way. The plural can be either *compendia* or *compendiums*. The *OED* prefers the former, most other dictionaries the latter.

**complacent, complaisant.** The first means self-satisfied, contented to the point of smugness. The second means affable and cheerfully obliging. If you are complacent, you are pleased with yourself. If you are complaisant, you wish to please others. Both words come from the Latin *complacere* (“to please”), but *complaisant* reached us by way of France, which accounts for the difference in spelling.

**complement, compliment.** The words come from the same Latin root, *complere*, meaning “to fill up,” but have long had separate meanings. *Compliment* means to praise. *Complement* has stayed closer to the original meaning: it means to fill out or make whole. As such, it should have been used here: “To compliment the shopping there will also be a ten-screen cinema, nightclub, disco, and entertainment complex” (advertisement in the *Financial Times*).
complete. Partridge includes *complete* in his list of false comparatives—that is, words that do not admit of comparison, such as *ultimate* and *eternal* (one thing cannot be “more ultimate” or “more eternal” than another). Technically, he is right, and you should take care not to modify *complete* needlessly. But there are occasions when it would be pedantic to carry the stricture too far. As William and Mary Morris note, there can be no real objection to “This is the most complete study to date of that period.” Use it, but use it judiciously.

**complete and unabridged.** Though blazoned across the packaging of countless audio books, the phrase is palpably redundant. If a work is unabridged, it must be complete, and vice versa. Choose one or the other.

**compound.** “News of a crop failure in the northern part of the country will only compound the government’s economic and political problems” (*Times*). Several authorities have deplored the use of *compound* in the sense of worsen, as it is employed above and increasingly elsewhere. They are right to point out that the usage springs from a misinterpretation of the word’s original and more narrow meanings, though that in itself is insufficient cause to avoid it. Many other words have arrived at their present meanings through misinterpretation (see, for instance, *internecine*).

A more pertinent consideration is whether we need *compound* in its looser sense. The answer must be no. In the example above, the writer might have used instead *multiply, aggravate, heighten, worsen, exacerbate, add to, intensify*, or any of a dozen other words. We should also remember that *compound* is already a busy word. Dictionaries list up to nine distinct meanings for it as a verb, seven as a noun, and nine as an adjective. In some of these, the word’s meanings are narrow. In legal parlance, for instance, *compound* has the very specific meaning “to forgo prosecution in return for payment or some other consideration” (it is from this that we get the widely misunderstood phrase “to compound a felony,” which has nothing to do with aggravation). To use *compound* to mean worsen in such a context is bound to be misleading.

All that said, most dictionaries recognize the newer meaning, so it cannot be called incorrect, but you should be aware that some more conservative users of English may object to it, and with some grounds.

**comprise.** “Beneath Sequoia is the Bechtel Group, a holding company
comprised of three main operating arms” (New York Times). Not quite. It is composed of three main operating arms, not comprised of them. Comprised of is a common expression, but it is always wrong. Comprise means to contain. The whole comprises the parts and not vice versa. A house may comprise seven rooms, but seven rooms do not comprise a house—and still less is a house comprised of seven rooms. The example above should be either “a holding company comprising three main operating arms” or “composed of three main operating arms.”

**conceived.** “Last week, twenty-five years after it was first conceived . . .” (Time). Delete first. Something can be conceived only once. Similarly with “initially conceived” and “originally conceived.”

**condone.** The word does not mean to approve or endorse, senses that are often attached to it. It means to pardon, forgive, overlook. You can condone an action without supporting it.

**confectionery.** Not -ary.

**confidant** (masc.)/ **confidante** (fem.) for a person entrusted with private information.

**Congo,** confusingly, now applies to two neighboring nations in Africa. The larger of the two, which was called Zaire until 1997, now styles itself the Democratic Republic of Congo. Bordering it to the west is the much smaller Republic of Congo.

**connote, denote.** Denote means simply to convey information. Connote describes additional aspects that follow from what is denoted. My frown as I approach the house might denote to an interested onlooker that I am unhappy, but connote that I have just spotted the large new dent on the rear passenger door of the family car.

**consensus.** “The general consensus in Washington . . .” (Chicago Tribune). A tautology. Any consensus must be general. Equally to be avoided is “consensus of opinion.” Finally, note that consensus is spelled with a middle s, like consent. It has nothing to do with census.
consummate. As a term of praise, the word is much too freely used. A consummate actor is not merely a very good one, but someone who is so good as to be unrivaled or nearly so. It should be reserved to describe only the very best.

contagious, infectious. Diseases spread by contact are contagious. Those spread by air and water are infectious. Used figuratively (“contagious laughter,” “infectious enthusiasm”), either is fine.

contemptible, contemptuous. Contemptible means deserving contempt. Contemptuous means bestowing it. A contemptible offer may receive a contemptuous response.

conterminous, coterminous. The two words mean the same thing—to share a boundary—though the first is more commonly used than the second.

continual, continuous. Although the distinction is not widely observed, or indeed always necessary, there is a useful difference between these words. Continual refers to things that happen repeatedly but not constantly. Continuous indicates an uninterrupted sequence. However, few readers will be aware of this distinction, and the writer who requires absolute clarity will generally be better advised to use incessant or uninterrupted for continuous and intermittent for continual.

contrary, converse, opposite, reverse. All four are variously confused at times, which is understandable, since their distinctions tend to blur. Briefly, contrary describes something that contradicts a proposition. Converse applies when the elements of a proposition are reversed. Opposite is something that is diametrically opposed to a proposition. Reverse can describe any of these.

Take the statement “I love you.” Its opposite is “I hate you.” Its converse is “You love me.” Its contrary would be anything that contradicted it: “I do not love you,” “I have no feelings at all for you,” “I like you moderately.” The reverse could embrace all of these meanings.

conurbation describes not any urban area, but rather a place where two or more sizable communities have sprawled together, such as Pasadena–Los Angeles–Long Beach in California and Amsterdam–Rotterdam–Haarlem–Utrecht in the Netherlands.
**convince, persuade.** Although often used interchangeably, the words are not quite the same. Briefly, you convince someone that he should believe but persuade him to act. It is possible to persuade a person to do something without convincing him of the correctness or necessity of doing it. A separate distinction is that *persuade* may be followed by an infinitive, but *convince* may not. Thus the following is wrong: “The Soviet Union evidently is not able to convince Cairo to accept a rapid cease-fire” (*New York Times*). Make it either “persuade Cairo to accept” or “convince Cairo that it should accept.”

**couldn’t of.** “Couldn’t of got it without you, Pops,’ Parker said” (*New Yorker*). As a shortened form of “couldn’t have,” *couldn’t of* does unquestionably avoid the clumsy double contraction *couldn’t’ve*, a form not often seen in print since J. D. Salinger stopped writing. However, I would submit that that does not make it satisfactory. Using the preposition *of* as a surrogate for ’ve seems to me simply to be swapping an ungainly form for an illiterate one. If *couldn’t’ve* is too painful to use, why not simply write *couldn’t have* and allow the reader’s imagination to supply the appropriate inflection?

**country, nation.** It is perhaps a little fussy to insist too strenuously on the distinction, but strictly *country* refers to the geographical characteristics of a place and *nation* to the political and social ones. Thus the United States is one of the richest nations but largest countries.

**Court of St. James’s** is the standard designation of the place to which ambassadors are posted in Great Britain. The absence of an apostrophe and a second *s* is common even in Britain but wrong, as here: “He was ambassador to the Court of St. James in 1939, when Britain offered him its sword to defend Poland” (*Observer*). *St. James’s* also applies as the spelling for the London park and square.

**crass** means stupid and grossly ignorant, to the point of insensitivity, and not merely coarse or tasteless. A thing must be pretty bad to be crass.

**creole, pidgin.** A pidgin—the word is thought to come from a Chinese pronunciation of the English word *business*—is a simplified and rudimentary language that springs up when two or more cultures come in contact. If that contact is prolonged and the pidgin is the first tongue for generations, the language will usually evolve into a more formalized creole (from the French for
indigenous). Most languages that are commonly referred to as pidgins are in fact creoles. The word *pidgin*, incidentally, has nothing to do with its near homophone from the feathered world, as was evidently thought here: “But to each other, and in pigeon half-Spanish to the Peruvian official . . .” *(Sunday Times)*.

**crescendo.** “David English, whose career seemed to be reaching a crescendo this month when he took over editorship of the stumbling *Mail on Sunday* . . .” *(Sunday Times)*. *Crescendo* does not mean reaching a pinnacle, as was apparently intended in the quotation, or signify a loud or explosive conclusion, as it is more commonly misused. Properly, it should be used only to describe a gradual increase in volume or intensity.

**criteria, criterion.** “The sole criteria now is personal merit,’ an immigration official said” *(Independent)*. She should have said *criterion*. Remember: one criterion, two criteria.

**croissant.** However you choose to pronounce it at home, it is perhaps worth noting that outside the United States, the closer you can come to saying “kwass-ohn,” the sooner you can expect to be presented with one.

*Crome Yellow* for the 1921 novel by Aldous Huxley. Not *Chrome*.

**culminate.** “The company’s financial troubles culminated in the resignation of the chairman last June” *(Times)*. *Culminate* signifies not simply any result or outcome, but rather one marking a high point. A series of battles may culminate in a final victory, but financial troubles do not culminate in a resignation.

**current, currently.** When you need to contrast the present with the past, *current* has its place, but all too often it is merely an idle occupier of space, as in these two examples from a single article in *Time* magazine: “The government currently owns 740 million acres, or 32.7 percent of the land in the U.S. . . . Property in the area is currently fetching $125 to $225 per acre.” The notion of currency is implicit in both statements, as it is in most other sentences in which *current* and *currently* appear. *Currently* should be deleted from both. (The second sentence could be further improved by changing *is fetching* to *fetches.*) See also *PRESENT*, *PRESENTLY*. 
curricula vitae is the plural of curriculum vitae.

curtsy. Not -ey.

curvaceous. Not -ious.

cut back. “Losses in the metal stamping division have forced the group to cut back production” (Daily Telegraph). It is more succinct to say, “have forced the group to cut production.” See PHRASAL VERBS.
dangling modifiers are one of the more complicated and disagreeable aspects of English usage, but at least they provide some compensation by being frequently amusing. Every authority has a stock of illustrative howlers. Fowler, for instance, gives us “Handing me my whisky, his face broke into an awkward smile” (that rare thing, a face that can pass whisky), while Bernstein offers “Although sixty-one years old when he wore the original suit, his waist was only thirty-five” and “When dipped in melted butter or Hollandaise sauce, one truly deserves the food of the gods.”

Most often, dangling modifiers are caused by unattached present participles. But they can also involve past and perfect participles, appositive phrases, clauses, infinitives, or simple adjectives. Occasionally the element to be modified is missing altogether: “As reconstructed by the police, Pfeffer at first denied any knowledge of the Byrd murder” (cited by Bernstein). It was not, of course, Pfeffer that was reconstructed by the police, but the facts or story or some other noun that is only implied.

Regardless of the part of speech at fault, there is in every dangling modifier a failure by the writer to say what he means because of a simple mispositioning of words. Consider this example: “Slim, of medium height, and with sharp features, Mr. Smith’s technical skills are combined with strong leadership qualities” (New York Times). As written, the sentence is telling us that Mr. Smith’s technical skills are slim and of medium height. It needs to be recast as “Slim, of medium height, and with sharp features, he combines technical skills with strong leadership qualities” or words to that effect (but see NON SEQUITUR).

Or consider this sentence from Time magazine: “In addition to being cheap and easily obtainable, Crotti claims that the bags have several advantages over other methods.” We can reasonably assume that it is not Crotti that is cheap and
easily obtainable but the bags. Again, recasting is needed: “In addition to being cheap and easily obtainable, the bags have several advantages over other methods, Crotti claims” (but see claim).

William and Mary Morris offer a simple remedy to the problem of dangling modifiers—namely, that after having written the modifying phrase or clause, you should make sure that the next word is the one to which the modifier pertains. That is sound enough advice, but like so much else in English usage, it will take you only so far.

To begin with, a number of participial phrases have the effect of prepositions or conjunctions, and you may dangle them as you will without breaking any rules. They include generally speaking, concerning, regarding, judging, owing to, failing, speaking of, and many others. Certain stock phrases and idiomatic constructions also flout the rule but are still acceptable, such as “putting two and two together” and “getting down to brass tacks.”

It is this multiplicity of exceptions that makes the subject so difficult. If I write, “As the author of this book, let me say this,” am I perpetrating a dangling modifier or simply resorting to idiom? It depends very much on which authority you consult.

It is perhaps also worth noting that opprobrium for the dangling modifier is not universal. Bergen and Cornelia Evans, after asserting that the problem has been common among good writers at least since Chaucer, call the rule banning its use “pernicious” and add that “no one who takes it as inviolable can write good English.” They maintain that the problem with sentences such as “Handing me my whisky, his face broke into a broad grin” is not that the participle is dangling, but rather that it isn’t. It sounds absurd only because “his face” is so firmly attached to the participial phrase. But when a note of absurdity is not sounded, they say, the sentence should be allowed to pass.

They are certainly right to caution against becoming obsessed with dangling modifiers, but there is, I think, a clearer need than they allow to watch out for them. Certainly if you find yourself writing a phrase that permits the merest hint of incongruity, it is time to recast your sentence.

Danke schön is the correct spelling for “Thank you very much” in German.
**danse macabre**, not *dance*, from the French for a dance of death. The plural is *danses macabres*.

**data.** Perhaps no other word better illustrates the extent to which questions of usage are often largely a matter of fashion. In Latin, *data* is of course a plural, and until fairly recent times virtually all authorities insisted, often quite strenuously, that it be treated as such in English. Thus “The data was fed into a computer program known as SLOSH” (*New Yorker*) should be “The data were fed . . . .”

The problem is that etymology doesn’t always count for much in English. If it did, we would have to write, “My stamina aren’t what they used to be” or “I’ve just paid two insurance premia.” For centuries we have been adapting Latin words to fit the needs and patterns of English. *Museums, agendas, stadiums, premiums*, and many others are freely, and usually unexceptionably, inflected on the English model, not the Latin one.

Indeed, many users of English show an increasing tendency to treat all Latin plurals as singulars, even those that have traditionally been treated as plural, most notably *criteria, media, phenomena, strata*, and *data*. With the first four of these the impulse is probably better resisted, partly as a concession to convention, but also because a clear and useful distinction can be made between the singular and plural forms. In stratified rock, for instance, each stratum is clearly delineated. In any list of criteria, each criterion is distinguishable from every other. *Media* suggests—or ought to suggest—one medium and another medium and another. In each case the elements that make up the whole are invariably distinct and separable.

But with *data* such distinctions are much less evident. This may be because, as Professor Randolph Quirk has suggested, we have a natural inclination to regard *data* as an aggregate—that is, as a word in which we perceive the whole more immediately than the parts. Just as we see a bowlful of sugar as a distinct entity rather than as a collection of granules (which is why we don’t say, “Sugar are sweet”), we tend to see *data* as a complete whole rather than one datum and another datum and another. In this regard it is similar to *news* (which some nineteenth-century users actually treated as a plural) and *information*.

The shift is clearly in the direction of treating *data* as a singular, as *The New
Yorker and several other publications have decided to do. Personally, and no
doubt perversely, I find that I have grown more attached to data as a plural with
the passage of time. I think there is a certain elegance and precision in “More
data are needed to provide a fuller picture of the DNA markers” (Nature) than
“The data by itself is vacuous” (New York Times). But that is no more than my opinion.

Whichever side you come down on, it is worth observing that the sense of
data is generally best confined to the idea of raw, uncollated bits of information,
the sort of stuff churned out by computers, and not extended to provide a simple
synonym for facts or reports or information, as it was in this New York Times
headline: “Austria magazine reports new data on Waldheim and Nazis.” The
“data” on inspection proved to be evidence and allegations—words that would
have more comfortably fit the context, if not the headline space.

da Vinci, Leonardo, for the Florentine artist (1452–1519). On second
reference he is properly referred to as Leonardo, not as da Vinci, though it must
also be said that you can find some good historians and writers (Daniel Boorstin,
for instance) who do not always observe the convention.

dB is the abbreviation for decibel.

decimate. Literally the word means to reduce by a tenth (from the ancient
practice of punishing the mutinous or cowardly by killing every tenth man). By
extension it may be used to describe the inflicting of heavy damage, but it should
never be used to denote annihilation, as in this memorably excruciating sentence
cited by Fowler: “Dick, hotly pursued by the scalp-hunter, turned in his saddle,
fired, and literally decimated his opponent.” Equally to be avoided are contexts
in which the word’s use is clearly inconsistent with its literal meaning, as in
“Frost decimated an estimated 80 percent of the crops.”

defective, deficient. When something is not working properly, it is defective;
when it is missing a necessary part, it is deficient.

definite, definitive. Definite means precise and unmistakable. Definitive means
final and conclusive. A definite offer is a clear one; a definitive offer is one that
permits of no haggling.
defuse, diffuse. Occasionally confused, as here: “In an attempt to diffuse panic over the disease, he spelled out the ways in which it was spread” (Independent). The he here refers to the Archbishop of Canterbury, who is hardly likely to wish to scatter panic, however thinly. That is the meaning of diffuse: to disperse or disseminate, to take a given volume and distribute it more widely. The notion of making less harmful is contained in the word defuse, which is of course the sense that the writer intended.

delectable. Not -ible.

demean. Some authorities, among them Fowler (second edition), object to the word in the sense of to debase or degrade, pointing out that its original, more neutral meaning signified only conduct or behavior (a neutrality preserved in the cognate form demeanor). But as Bernstein notes, the looser usage has been with us since 1601, which suggests that it may be just a bit late to try to hold the line now.

demise. “But fears about the demise of the U.S. economy look exaggerated” (Observer). They would just about have to. Demise does not mean decline, as is all too often thought. It means death. It applies to things that no longer exist at all.

deplete, reduce. Though their meanings are roughly the same, deplete has the additional connotation of injurious reduction. As the Evanses note, a garrison may be reduced by administrative order but depleted by sickness.

deplore. Strictly, you may deplore a thing but not a person. I may deplore your behavior, but I cannot deplore you.

deprecate. “She was widely noted for her self-deprecating manner” (New York Times). Deprecate really means to disapprove of strongly or protest against, but has been so routinely confused with depreciate (as in the example above) that nearly all dictionaries now accept the additional usage. A careful user may salute you for observing deprecate’s older and narrower meaning, but cannot fairly condemn you if you don’t.

de rigueur. Often misspelled. Note the second u.
derisive, derisory. Something that is derisive conveys ridicule or contempt. Something that is derisory invites it. A derisory offer is likely to provoke a derisive response.

despite, in spite of. There is no distinction between the two. A common construction is seen here: “But despite the fall in sterling, Downing Street officials were at pains to play down any suggestion of crisis” (Daily Telegraph). Because despite and in spite of indicate a change of emphasis, but is generally superfluous with either. It is enough to say, “Despite the fall in sterling, Downing Street officials . . .”

destroy is an incomparable—almost. If a house is consumed by fire, it is enough to say that it was destroyed, not that it was “completely destroyed” or “totally destroyed.” However, and as illogical as it may seem, it is all right to speak of a house that has been partly destroyed. There is simply no other way of putting it without resorting to more circuitous descriptions. That is perhaps absurd and inconsistent, but ever thus was English.

diagnosis, prognosis. To make a diagnosis is to identify and define a problem, usually a disease. A prognosis is a projection of the course and likely outcome of a problem. Diagnosis applies only to conditions, not to people. Thus “Asbestos victims were not diagnosed in large numbers until the 1960s” (Time) is not quite right. It was the victims’ conditions that were not diagnosed, not the victims themselves.

dialect, patois. Both describe the form of language prevailing in a region and can be used interchangeably, though patois is normally better reserved for contexts involving French or its variants. “He spoke in the patois of Yorkshire” is at best jocular. The plural of patois, incidentally, is also patois.

dieresis or diaeresis, for the punctuation mark consisting of two dots above a vowel, as in zoölogy and naïve, which is used to indicate that adjacent vowels are to be sounded separately. (It is a curiosity of English that the word dieresis is entitled to but never given the mark it describes.) The dieresis always goes above the second vowel in the pair. It should not be confused with the German umlaut, which also consists of two dots, as in Göring or Müller, but which signifies a phonetic shift rather than an elaboration into separate sounds.
differ, diverge. “There now seems some hope that these divergent views can be reconciled” (Daily Telegraph). Strictly speaking, that is unlikely. When two things diverge, they move farther apart (just as when they converge they come together). Diverge is not a word that should be applied freely to any difference of opinion, but only to those in which a rift is widening.

different. Often used unnecessarily, sometimes by the most careful writers: “This manifested itself in countless different ways” (Daniel J. Boorstin, Cleopatra’s Nose); “Just in this one small area can be found more than 250 different types of plants” (New York Times); “[He] published at least five different books on grammar” (Simon, Paradigms Lost). Frequently, as in each of these examples, it can be deleted without loss.

different from, to, than. Among the more tenacious beliefs among many writers and editors is that different may be followed only by from. At least since 1906, when the Fowler brothers raised the issue in The King’s English, authorities have pointed out that there is no real basis for this belief, but still it persists.

Different from is, to be sure, the usual form in most sentences and the only acceptable form in some, as when it precedes a noun or pronoun (“My car is different from his”; “Men are different from women”). But when different introduces a clause, there can be no valid objection to following it with a to (though this usage is chiefly British) or than, as in this sentence by John Maynard Keynes: “How different things appear in Washington than in London.” You may, if you insist, change it to “How different things appear in Washington from how they appear in London,” but all it gives you is more words, not better grammar.

dilemma. “The chief dilemma facing Mr. Greenspan is whether or not to raise interest rates” (Sunday Times). Dilemma does not mean just any difficulty or predicament. Strictly speaking, it applies only when someone is faced with two distinct courses of action, of which neither is obviously superior to the other. A few authorities (notably Fowler) accept its extension to contexts involving more than two alternatives, but even then the number of alternatives should be definite (and small) and the best course of action uncertain.

DiMaggio (no space) for the baseball players Joe and Dom.
diphtheria. Note that the first syllable is spelled diph-, not dipth-, and is pronounced accordingly.

disassemble, dissemble. “It would almost have been cheaper to dissemble the factory and move it to Wales” (Sunday Times). Actually, no. Unlike dissociate and disassociate, which mean the same thing, dissemble and disassemble have quite separate meanings. Dissemble means to conceal. If someone close to you dies, you may dissemble your grief with a smile. The word wanted in the example above was disassemble, which means to take apart.

disassociate, dissociate. The first is not incorrect, but the second has the virtue of brevity.

discernible. Not -able.

discomfit, discomfort. “In this she is greatly assisted by her husband . . . who enjoys spreading discomfiture in a good cause as much as she does” (Observer). The writer here, like many before him, clearly meant discomfort, which has nothing in common with discomfiture beyond a superficial resemblance. Discomfit means to rout, overwhelm, or completely disconcert. Some dictionaries now accept the newer sense of to perplex or induce uneasiness, but I would submit that the distinction is very much worth preserving. If discomfort is the condition you have in mind, why not use that word and leave discomfiture for less discriminating users?

discreet, discrete. The first means circumspect, careful, showing good judgment (“He promised to be discreet in his inquiries”). The second means unattached or unrelated (“The compound was composed of discrete particles”).

disinterested, uninterested. “Gerulaitis, after appearing almost disinterested in the first set, took a 5–1 lead in the second” (New York Times). A participant in a tennis match might appear uninterested, but he would be unlikely to be disinterested, which means neutral and impartial. A disinterested person is one who has no stake in the outcome of an event; an uninterested person is one who doesn’t care. As with discomfit and discomfort (see above), the distinction is a useful one and well worth fighting for.

dispensable. Not -ible.
**disposal, disposition.** If you are talking about getting rid of, use *disposal* (“the disposal of nuclear weapons”). If you mean arranging, use *disposition* (“the disposition of troops on the battlefield”).

**distrait, distraught.** The first means abstracted in thought, absent-minded. The second means deeply agitated.

**disturb, perturb.** They can often be used interchangeably, but generally the first is better applied to physical agitation, the second to mental agitation.

**dived, dove.** Either is acceptable.

**Doberman (British Dobermann) pinscher** for the breed of dog.

**dormouse** for the small rodent, which isn’t actually a mouse at all. The name is thought to be a corruption of the Norman French *dormeus*, meaning *sleepy*. The plural is *dormice*.

**dos and don’ts.** Not do’s.

**double meanings.** Anyone who has written headlines for a living will know the embarrassment that comes from causing hilarity to a large group of people by writing an inadvertently two-faced headline. I have no doubt that someone at the *Toronto Globe and Mail* is still cringing at having written “Upturns may indicate some bottoms touched” (cited in *Punch*), as must earlier have been the author of the oft-quoted and variously attributed “MacArthur flies back to front.” It is always worth remembering that many words carry a range of meanings or function as both nouns and verbs, and consequently offer unexpected opportunities for mischief.

**double negatives.** Most people know you shouldn’t say, “I haven’t had no dinner,” but some writers, doubtless more out of haste than of ignorance, sometimes perpetrate sentences that are scarcely less jarring, as here: “Stranded and uncertain of their location, the survivors endured for six days without hardly a trace of food” (*Chicago Tribune*). Since *hardly*, like *scarcely*, has the grammatical effect of a negative, it requires no further negation. Make it “with hardly.”

Some usage guides flatly condemn all double negatives, but there is one kind,
in which a negative in the main clause is paralleled in a subordinate construction, that we might view more tolerantly. Evans cites this sentence from Jane Austen: “There was none too poor or remote not to feel an interest.” And Shakespeare wrote: “Nor what he said, though it lacked form a little, was not like madness.” But such constructions must be considered exceptional. More often the intrusion of a second negative is merely a sign of fuzzy writing. At best it will force the reader to pause and perform some verbal arithmetic, adding negative to negative, as here: “The plan is now thought unlikely not to go ahead” (Times). At worst it may leave the reader darkly baffled, as in this memorably convoluted sentence from a leading authority: “Moreover . . . our sense of linguistic tact will not urge us not to use words that may offend or irritate” (Quirk, The Use of English).

**doubt if, that, whether.** Idiom demands some selectivity in the choice of conjunction to introduce a clause after *doubt* and *doubtful*. The rule is simple: *doubt that* should be reserved for negative contexts (“There is no doubt that . . .”); “It was never doubtful that . . .”) and interrogative ones (“Do you have any doubt that . . .?”; “Was it ever doubtful that . . .?”). *Whether* or *if* should be used in all others (“I doubt if he will come”; “It is doubtful whether the rain will stop”).

**doubtless, undoubtedly, indubitably.** “Tonight he faces what is doubtlessly the toughest and loneliest choice of his thirteen-year stewardship of the Palestine Liberation Organization” (Washington Post). Since *doubtless* can be an adverb as well as an adjective, there is no need to add -ly to it. *Undoubtedly* would have been a better choice still, because, as the Evanses note, it has a less concessive air. *Doubtless* usually suggests a tone of reluctance or resignation: “You are doubtless right.” *Undoubtedly* carries more conviction: “You are undoubtedly right.” *Indubitably* is a somewhat jocular synonym for either.

**douse, dowse.** The first means to drench; the second means to search for water.

**drunk driving, drunken driving.** Although not all style arbiters agree on this, *drunken* is the usual and preferred form when the word appears adjectivally before a noun—thus “drunken behavior,” “drunken driver,” “drunken driving.”

**drunkenness.** Note -nn-.

**due to.** Most authorities continue to accept that *due* is an adjective only and must always modify a noun. Thus “He was absent due to illness” would be
wrong. We could correct it either by writing “He was absent because of [or owing to] illness” or by recasting the sentence in such a way as to give *due* a noun to modify, e.g., “His absence was due to illness.”

The rule is mystifyingly inconsistent—no one has ever really explained why “owing to” used prepositionally is acceptable while “due to” used prepositionally is not—but it should perhaps still be observed, at least in formal writing, if only to avoid a charge of ignorance.

**Dutchess** for the county in New York State.
**E**

**Each** is not always an easy word, even for the authorities. Here are William and Mary Morris writing in *The Harper Dictionary of Contemporary Usage*: “Each of the variants indicated in boldface type count as an entry.” Make it *counts*. As the Morrices doubtless knew but failed to note, when *each* is the subject of a sentence, the verb should be singular.

A plural verb is correct when the sentence has another subject and *each* is a mere adjunct. Again we can cite an error made by an authority, in this case Philip Howard in *The State of the Language*: “The separate genres of journalism each creates its own jargon, as any specialized subject or activity always does.” It should be “each create their own jargon.” *Genres* is the subject of that sentence, so the verb must respond to it.

Deciding whether to use a singular or plural verb is not as difficult as it may at first seem. In fact, the rule could hardly be more straightforward. When *each* precedes the noun or pronoun to which it refers, the verb should be singular: “Each of us was . . .” When it follows the noun or pronoun, the verb should be plural: “We each were . . .”

*Each* not only influences the number of the verb, it also influences the number of later nouns and pronouns. In simpler terms, if *each* precedes the verb, subsequent nouns and pronouns should be plural (e.g., “They each are subject to sentences of five years”), but if *each* follows the verb, the subsequent nouns and pronouns should be singular (“They are each subject to a sentence of five years”).

**Each and every** is at best a trite way of providing emphasis, at worst redundant, and generally both, as here: “Each and every one of the twelve songs on Marshall Crenshaw’s debut album is breezy and refreshing” (*Washington Post*). Equally to be avoided is *each individual*, as in “Players do not have to face the
perils of qualifying for each individual tournament” (New York Times). In both cases each alone would have been sufficient.

**each other, one another.** A few arbiters of usage continue to insist on each other for two things and one another for more than two. There is no harm in observing such a distinction, but little to be gained from it, and, as Fowler long ago noted, the practice has no basis in historical usage.

**Earhart, Amelia,** for the aviator who famously disappeared while trying to circumnavigate the globe in 1937.

**Earth, earth.** When considered as a planet, particularly in apposition to other cosmic features, Earth is normally capitalized. In more general senses (“He shot the arrow and it fell to earth”), lowercase is usually favored.

**economic, economical.** If what you mean is cheap and thrifty, use economical. For every other sense, use economic. An economic rent is one that is not too cheap for the landlord. An economical rent is one that is not too expensive for the tenant.

**Ecuadorean** is generally the preferred spelling for a person or product from Ecuador.

**e.g., i.e.** The first is an abbreviation of exempli gratia and means “for example,” as in “Some words are homonyms, e.g., blew and blue.” The second is the abbreviation for id est and means “that is” or “that is to say,” as in “He is pusillanimous, i.e., lacking in courage.”

**egoism, egotism.** The first pertains to the philosophical notion that a person can prove nothing beyond the existence of his own mind. It is the opposite of altruism and is better left to contexts involving metaphysics and ethics. If all you wish to suggest is inflated vanity or preoccupation with the self, use egotism.

**Eiffel Tower,** Paris, but **Eifel Mountains,** Germany.

**eisteddfod** for a Welsh festival or competition of music or literature. The plural is eisteddfods or (in Welsh) eisteddfoda.

**either.** “Decisions on Mansfield’s economy are now made in either Detroit,
Pittsburgh, or New York” (*New York Times*). *Either* suggests a duality and is almost always better avoided when the context involves quantities of more than two. Often in such constructions, as in the example cited, it is unnecessary anyway; delete it and the sentence says no less.

A separate problem with *either* is seen here: “But in every case the facts either proved too elusive or the explanations too arcane to be satisfactory.” *Either* should be placed before “the facts” or deleted; for a discussion, see *both . . . and*. For a discussion of errors of number involving either, see *neither*.

**elegy, eulogy.** The first is a mournful poem; the second is a tribute to the dead.

**elemental, elementary.** *Elemental* refers to things that are basic or primary: “Physiology is an elemental part of a medical student’s studies.” *Elementary* means simple or introductory: “This phrase book provides an elementary guide to Spanish.”

**elicit, extract, extort.** These three are broadly synonymous but are distinguished by the degree of force they imply. *Elicit*, the mildest of the three, means to draw or coax out, and can additionally suggest an element of craftiness: you can elicit information without the informant’s being aware that he has divulged it. *Extract* suggests a stronger and more persistent effort, possibly involving threats or importuning. *Extort* is stronger still and suggests clear threats of violence or harm.

**embalmment.** Note -mm-.

**embarrass, embarrassment.** Both are misspelled more often than they should be. Note, however, that the French spelling is *embarras*, as in *embarras de richesses* (“an embarrassment of riches”) and *embarras du choix* (“an embarrassment of choice”). See also *harass*.

**empathy, sympathy.** *Empathy* denotes a deep emotional understanding of the feelings or problems of another. It is thus close in meaning to *compassion*. *Sympathy* is more general. It can denote a closeness of understanding, but it can equally suggest no more than an abstract or intellectual awareness of another’s misfortune. *Empathy* generally applies only to serious misfortunes; *sympathy* can apply to any small annoyance or setback.
empower. Not en-.

cumbrance. Not -erance.

demic. See EPIDEMIC.

enormity. “Some people . . . lamented that the men whom America sent into space were not articulate or impassioned enough to register the enormity of their undertaking” (New Yorker). Enormity does not, as is frequently thought, indicate size, but rather refers to something that is wicked, monstrous, and outrageous (“The enormity of Hitler’s crimes will never be forgotten”). In the example above, the writer should have said enormousness—or, better still, found a less ungainly synonym like immensity or vastness.

envisage, envision. Both words suggest the calling up of a mental image. Envision is slightly the loftier of the two. You might envision a better life for yourself, but if all you are thinking about is how the dining room will look when the walls have been repainted, envisage is probably the better word. If no mental image is involved, neither word is correct. A rough rule is that if you find yourself following either word with that, you are using it incorrectly, as here: “He envisaged that there would be no access to the school from the main road” (cited by Gowers).

epidemic, endemic, pandemic. Strictly speaking, only people can suffer an epidemic (the word means “in or among people”). An outbreak of disease among animals is epizootic. It is also worth noting that epidemic refers only to outbreaks. When a disease or other problem is of long standing, it is endemic. Pandemic (meaning “all the people”) is often vaguely defined in dictionaries. Strictly, it indicates only an unusually high level of infection. By this definition you could have a pandemic in a single locality. In practice, however, the word is usually reserved for outbreaks that are global or nearly so.

epigram, epigraph. The first is a short, witty saying or poem. The second is an inscription, as on a monument or statue, or an introductory quotation at the beginning of a book or substantial block of text.

equable, equitable. Most dictionaries define equable as meaning steady and unvarying, but it should also convey the sense of being remote from extremes. A
consistently hot climate is not equable, no matter how unvarying the
temperature. Similarly, someone whose outlook is invariably sunny cannot
properly be described as having an equable temperament. Equitable, with which
equable is sometimes confused, means fair and impartial. An equitable
settlement is a just one.

equally as is always wrong. “This is equally as good” should be “This is
equally good” or “This is as good.”

especially, specially. Specially means for a specific purpose or occasion, as in
“a specially designed wedding dress.” Especially means particularly or
exceptionally, as in “an especially talented singer.” A simple guide is to ask
yourself whether you could substitute particularly. If so, the word you want is
especially.

estimated at about. “The crowd was estimated at about 50,000” (Los Angeles
Times). Because estimated contains the idea of an approximation, about is
superfluous. Delete it.

et cetera (etc.). “Thousands competed, thousands watched, and thousands also
observed—volunteers all of them—who only pinned numbers, massaged
muscles, supplied water, charted positions, screamed encouragement, etc.” (Los
Angeles Times). In lexicography and other types of technical writing, etc. has its
place. But in newspapers and magazines its use can suggest that the writer didn’t
know what else he meant or, as in the foregoing example, was too lazy to tell us.
Generally it is better avoided.

euro (lowercase) for the unit of currency used by most, but not all, of the
nations of the European Union since early 2002.

evangelical, evangelistic. Generally, evangelical is best reserved for contexts
pertaining to the Christian gospel. If you need a word to describe militant zeal or
the like, evangelistic is almost always better (e.g., “the evangelistic fervor of the
Campaign for Nuclear Disarmament”).

eventuate. “Competition for economic interest, power and social esteem can
eventuate in community formation only if . . .” (British Journal of Sociology,
cited by Hudson). A pompous synonym for result.
ever. “On Wall Street, a late rally provided shares with their largest ever one-
day rise” (Times). Many authorities (including the style book of the Times itself)
object to ever in the sense used here on the grounds that the word covers the
future as well as the past, and we cannot possibly know what Wall Street stocks,
or anything else, will be doing tomorrow.

The logic of the argument is impeccable, but it has two shortcomings. First, it
fails to acknowledge that the usage has been well established for the better part
of a century and can thus be defended on grounds of idiom. A more important
consideration, perhaps, is that ever often adds a useful air of embracing
generality. If I say, “Have you been to Paris?” there is some ambiguity as to
what span of time we are considering. If, however, I say, “Have you ever been to
Paris?” you cannot doubt that I mean at any time in your life. In short, there may
be a case for using ever carefully, even sparingly. To ban it outright is fussy and
unidiomatic and can easily lead to unnecessary confusion.

exception proves the rule, the. A widely misunderstood expression. As a
moment’s thought should confirm, it isn’t possible for an exception to confirm a
rule—but then, that isn’t the sense that was originally intended. Prove here is a
“fossil”—that is, a word or phrase that is now generally meaningless except
within the confines of certain sayings (hem and haw, rank and file, and to and
fro are other fossil expressions). Originally prove meant test (it comes from the
Latin probare, “to test”), so “the exception proves the rule” meant—and really
still ought to mean—that the exception tests the rule. The original meaning of
prove is preserved more clearly in two other expressions: proving ground and
the proof of the pudding is in the eating.

exigent, exiguous. The first means urgent and pressing or exacting and
demanding; the second means scanty and slender. But both have a number of
synonyms that may spare the reader a trip to the dictionary.

exorbitant. Many writers, on both sides of the Atlantic, show a perplexing
impulse to put an h into the word, as here: “This is on the argument that they are
troubled by exhorbitant interest charges” (Times). Inhexcusable.

expatriate. All too often misspelled, as here: “Kirov and other Russian
expatriots . . .” (Daily Mail). Not to be confused with compatriot.
**expectorate, spit.** The distinction between these two is not, it must be conceded, often a matter of great moment, but still it is worth noting that there is a distinction. To spit means to expel saliva; to expectorate is to dredge up and expel phlegm from the lungs. *Expectorate* therefore is not just an unnecessary euphemism for *spit*, it is usually an incorrect one.

**expressible.** Not -able.

**extempore, impromptu.** Although both words describe unrehearsed remarks or performances, their meanings are slightly different, in that *impromptu* can apply only to acts that are improvised at the time of performance, whereas *extempore* suggests only that the actions were undertaken without the benefit of notes or other formal props. *Impromptu*, in other words, conveys a greater element of surprise on the part of the speaker or performer.

**extraneous.** Not exter-.

**extrovert.** Not extra-.
fable, parable, allegory, myth. Fables and parables are both stories intended to have instructional value. They differ in that parables are always concerned with religious or ethical themes, while fables are usually concerned with more practical considerations (and frequently have animals as the characters). An allegory is an extended metaphor—that is, a narrative in which the principal characters represent things that are not explicitly stated. Orwell’s Animal Farm is an allegory. Myths originally were stories designed to explain some belief or phenomenon, usually the exploits of superhuman beings. Today the word can signify any popular misconception or invented story.

facade. “Above the pilasters, on the front facade, is a five-story-high keystone” (Time). Although most dictionaries allow that facade can apply to any side of a building, it normally indicates the front (or face), and thus gives “front facade” a ring of redundancy.

facile is usually defined as easy, smooth, without much effort. But the word should contain at least a suggestion of derision. Facile writing isn’t just easily read or written, it is also lacking in substance or import. Unless a pejorative sense is intended, the use of facile is, to quote Fowler, “ill-judged.”

factious, factitious. Factious applies to factions; it is something that promotes internal bickering or disharmony. Factitious applies to that which is artificial or a sham; applause for a despotic ruler may be factitious. Neither should be confused with fractious, a term for something that is unruly or disorderly, as in “a fractious crowd.”

fact that. This phrase made Strunk “quiver with revulsion,” and he insisted that it be revised out of every sentence in which it appeared. That may be putting it a trifle strongly, but it is true that the phrase generally signals a sentence that could profitably be recast, as here: “Our arrival was delayed for four hours due to the
fact that the ferry failed to arrive” (Sunday Telegraph). Often a simple deletion will do: “Blumenbach, on the other hand, was astutely aware of the fact that apparently closely allied species could differ markedly in the kinds and morphologies of the teeth they possessed” (Science News). Remove “of the fact” and the sentence loses nothing in terms of sense.

fait accompli. French for “an accomplished fact.” The plural is faits accomplis.

Falange, Phalange. The first is a political party in Spain, the second a political party in Lebanon.

Farrar, Straus & Giroux for the publisher.

farther, further. Insofar as the two are distinguished, farther usually appears in contexts involving literal distance (“New York is farther from Sydney than from London”) and further in contexts involving figurative distance (“I can take this plan no further”). But there is, as the OED notes, “a large intermediate class of instances in which the choice between the two forms is arbitrary.”

faux pas. French for an error or blunder. The plural is also faux pas.

faze, meaning to disturb or worry, is sometimes confused with phase, as here: “Christmas Doesn’t Phase Me” (New York Review of Books headline).

feasible. Not -able. The word does not mean probable or plausible, as is sometimes thought, but simply capable of being done. An action can be feasible without being either desirable or likely.

feet, foot. “Accompanied by Interior Secretary Gale Norton, the President also stopped at the 275-feet-high General Sherman Tree, a sequoia thought to be one of the largest living things on Earth” (Los Angeles Times). It is a quirk of English that when one noun qualifies another, the first is normally singular. That is why we talk about toothbrushes rather than teethbrushes and horse races rather than horses races. Exceptions can be found—systems analyst, singles bar—but usually these appear only when the normal form would produce ambiguity. When a noun is not being made to function as an adjective, the plural is the usual form. Thus a wall that is six feet high is a six-foot-high wall. For a discussion of the punctuation distinction, see HYPHEN in the appendix.
fever, temperature. You often hear sentences like “John had a temperature yesterday” when in fact John has a temperature every day. What he had yesterday was a fever. The distinction is not widely observed, even by some medical authorities. Bernstein cites the instance of a Massachusetts hospital that issued a bulletin stating, “Everett has no temperature.” Fowler excused the usage as a “sturdy indefensible,” but even so it is better avoided in careful writing, particularly when the remedy has the virtues of simplicity and brevity.

fewer, less. “In the first four months of the year Rome’s tourists were 700,000 less than in the corresponding period last year” (Guardian). Probably no other pair of words causes more problems, and with less justification, than less and fewer. The generally cited rule is that less applies to quantity and fewer to number. A rougher but more helpful guide is to use less with singular nouns (less money, less sugar) and fewer with plural nouns (fewer houses, fewer doctors). Thus the quotation above should be either “Rome’s tourists [plural noun] were 700,000 fewer” or “the number [singular noun] of tourists was 700,000 less.”

An apparent exception to the rule can be seen here: “. . . but some people earn fewer than $750 a year” (Times). Although $750 is inarguably a plural sum, it functions as a singular. We see it as a totality, not as a collection of individual dollars. Thus the sentence should read “less than $750.” In the same way it would be wrong to write, “He lives fewer than fifty miles from London” because fifty miles is being thought of as a total distance and not as fifty individual miles.

Another problem worth noting occurs in this sentence: “Representatives have offered to produce the Sunday supplements on one fewer press than at present” (Times). Idiom, according to Bernstein, doesn’t allow “one fewer press.” You must make it either “one press fewer,” which is more grammatical, or “one less press,” which is more idiomatic.

filet mignon, but fillet for all other dishes and contexts.

filigree for intricate or delicate ornamentation.

finalize is still objected to by many as an ungainly and unnecessary word, and there is no arguing that several other verbs—finish, complete, conclude—do the job as well without raising hackles.
Finnegans Wake (no apostrophe) for the 1939 novel by James Joyce.

first, firstly. The question of whether one may write firstly or not when beginning a list of points constitutes one of the more inane but most hotly disputed issues in the history of English usage. De Quincey called firstly “a ridiculous and most pedantic neologism,” and the view has been widely echoed since, though what makes it so objectionable has never been entirely clear. Fowler, ever the cool head, should perhaps be allowed the final word on the matter: “The preference for first over firstly in formal enumerations is one of the harmless pedantries in which those who like oddities because they are odd are free to indulge, provided that they abstain from censuring those who do not share the liking.”

A separate problem with first is seen here: “The Bangladesh government reacted angrily when plans for blood tests were first announced” (Independent). With words like announced, reported, revealed, and (especially) conceived and created, first is nearly always superfluous, sometimes glaringly so, and should be removed.

first and foremost. Choose one.

flak. Often misspelled, as here: “Japanese women take a lot of flack from foreigners for their alleged docility” (Observer). The word, for what it is worth, is a contraction of the German Fliegerabwehrkanone (“antiaircraft gun”), which contains nineteen letters, not one of them a c. Flack is, however, the correct spelling for the slightly pejorative term for a publicist.

flammable, inflammable. It is an odd inconsistency of English that incombustible describes an object that won’t burn while inflammable describes an object that will. Because the meaning of inflammable is susceptible to misunderstanding, manufacturers and others who deal with combustible materials increasingly use the less ambiguous flammable. In other cases this might be considered a regrettable concession to ignorance, but it would be even more regrettable to insist on linguistic purity at the expense of human safety.

flank. “A Special Report on Finland tomorrow looks at the only Western nation that has to live with the Soviet Union as its neighbor on two flanks” (Times). Two points to note here. The first is that a thing can have only two
flanks, so the usage above would be tautological if it weren’t inaccurate. The second point is that flanks fall on either side of a body. If I am flanked by people, they are to my left and right. Finland is flanked by the Soviet Union (or at least it was at the time the sentence appeared) and Sweden, and not by the Soviet Union alone, which lay to the east and south. For a similar error, see SURROUNDED.

**flaunt, flout.** The confusion over these two is so widespread that many dictionaries have granted them legitimacy as synonyms. To flaunt means to display ostentatiously, to show off. To flout means to treat with contempt, to disregard in a smug manner. I would submit that there is every reason for keeping these meanings distinct.

**florescent, fluorescent.** The first means in flower, the second radiating light.

**flotsam and jetsam.** In the perhaps unlikely event that you need to distinguish these two, jetsam is that part of a shipwreck that has been thrown overboard (think of jettison) and flotsam that which has floated off of its own accord. (Wreckage found attached to a buoy is lagan.) There was a time when the distinction was important: flotsam went to the Crown and jetsam to the lord of the manor on whose land it washed up.

**flounder, founder.** *Founder* means to sink, either literally (as with a ship) or figuratively (as with a project). *Flounder* means to flail helplessly. It too can be used literally (as with someone struggling in deep water) or figuratively (as with a nervous person making an impromptu speech).

**Fogg, Phileas.** Not Phogg, not Phineas, for the character in Jules Verne’s *Around the World in Eighty Days*.

**forbear, forebear.** The first is a verb meaning to cease or refrain from. The second is a noun and means ancestor.

**forbid, prohibit.** The words have the same meaning, but the construction of sentences often dictates which should be used. In prepositional constructions, *forbid* may be followed only by to (“I forbid you to go”). *Prohibit* may not be followed by to but only by from (“He was prohibited from going”) or by an object noun (“The law prohibits the construction of houses without planning...
Thus the following is wrong: “They are forbidden from uttering any public comments” (New York Times). Make it either “They are prohibited from uttering . . .” or “They are forbidden to utter . . .” A small additional point is that forbid’s past-tense form, forbade, has the preferred pronunciation “for-bad,” not “for-bade.”

**forceful, forcible, forced.** Forcible indicates the use of brute force (“forcible entry”). Forceful suggests a potential for force (“forceful argument,” “forceful personality”). Forced can be used for forcible (as in “forced entry”) but more often is reserved for actions that are involuntary (“forced march”) or that occur under strain (“forced laughter,” “forced landing”).

**forego, forgo.** Commonly confused, as here: “The independents must destroy all documents obtained during the case and agree to forego any further litigation against the chains for three years” (International Herald Tribune). Forego means to go before, to precede. To do without is to forgo.

**forgather.** “Wherever people foregather, one hears two kinds of talk” (Simon, Paradigms Lost). Although forgather is not incorrect, the more usual spelling is gather. A separate question is whether forgather adds anything that gather alone wouldn’t say, apart from a creak of antiquity.

**former, latter.** Former, properly used, should refer only to the first of two things and latter to the second of two things. Both words, since they require the reader to hark back to an earlier reference, should be used sparingly and only when what they refer to is immediately evident. Few editing shortcomings are more annoying and less excusable than requiring a reader to cover old ground.

**fortissimo, fortississimo.** The first (abbreviated ff.) means very loud; the second (abbreviated fff.) means as loud as possible.

**fortuitous.** Not to be confused with fortunate, as it was here: “If Mr. Perella’s merger assignment was mostly chance, it nevertheless was fortuitous” (New York Times). Fortuitous means accidental or by chance, so this sentence is telling us that Mr. Perella’s assignment was not only mostly chance, it was also entirely chance. A fortuitous occurrence may or may not be a fortunate one.

**fraction.** “The gold recovered so far may represent only a fraction of the total
hoard” (*Sunday Times*). A few careful users continue to maintain that *fraction* in the sense of a small part, as in the example, is ambiguous: 99/100 is also a fraction but hardly a negligible part. The looser usage, however, has been around for at least three hundred years (*Shakespeare uses it in Troilus and Cressida*) and is unlikely to be misunderstood in most contexts. Even so, it would be more precise to say “a small part” or “a tiny part.” See also PERCENTAGE, PROPORTION.

**Frankfurt am Main** is the formal name of the German city that serves as the nation’s financial center. It should be remembered that there is a second Frankfurt in Germany, Frankfurt an der Oder, and that the two sometimes need to be distinguished. (Note particularly that one uses *am*, the other *an*.) It is perhaps also worth noting that most American communities, including the capital of Kentucky, spell the name *Frankfort*.

**Frazer-Nash** for the British sports car. Not *Fraser-*.  

**fresh.** Usually the word serves as an unobjectionable synonym for *new*, but it has additional connotations that make it inappropriate in some contexts, as the following vividly demonstrates: “Three weeks after the earthquake, fresh bodies have been found in the wreckage” (cited by Spiegl in *The Joy of Words*).

**Friesian, Frisian.** *Friesian* is a breed of cattle; *Frisian* is a north Germanic language and the name of a chain of islands lying off and politically divided between the Netherlands, Denmark, and Germany. Friesian cattle in the United States are normally called *Holsteins*. *Frisian* is also sometimes applied to people from Friesland, the Dutch province that partly encompasses the Frisian Islands.

**frisson.** “A slight frisson went through the nation yesterday” (*Times*). There is no other kind of frisson than a slight one. The word means shiver or shudder.

**Fujiyama** means Mount Fuji, so “Mount Fujiyama” is redundant. Make it either Fujiyama or Mount Fuji. The Japanese also call it Fujisan and Fujinoyama.

**fulsome** is one of the most frequently misapplied words in English. The sense that is usually accorded it—of being abundant or unstinting—is almost the opposite of the word’s historic meaning. *Fulsome* is related to *foul* and means odious or overfull, offensively insincere. “Fulsome praise,” properly used, isn’t a
lavish tribute; it is unctuous and insincere toadying.

**fusion, fission.** Both describe ways of producing nuclear energy: fusion by fusing two light nuclei into a single, heavier nucleus, fission by splitting the nucleus of an atom.

**future.** As an adjective, the word is often used unnecessarily: “Though he refused to be drawn on his future plans, another television series seems a distinct possibility” (*USA Today*); “The parties are prepared to say little about how they see their future prospects” (*Times*). In both sentences, and nearly all others like them, *future* adds nothing and should be deleted.
gabardine, gaberding. The first is a type of worsted cloth, the second a long cloak.

gambit is often misused in either of two ways. First, it sometimes appears as “opening gambit,” which is redundant. Second, it is often employed to mean no more than a ploy or tactic. Properly, a gambit is an opening move that involves some strategic sacrifice or concession. All gambits are opening moves, but not all opening moves are gambits.

gamut signifies a range of items, originally the notes in a musical scale, but now anything that reasonably describes a series. The sense, however, should be one of completeness. You might say that a collection of chemicals runs the gamut from arsenic to zinc, but not from, say, arsenic to benzene. Beware also that “runs the gamut” is a slightly hackneyed phrase anyway, and often is better replaced with something more concise or original. (See also gantlet, gauntlet.)

gantlet, gauntlet. Traditionally in American English, a distinction has been observed between the two. A gantlet was a double line of people armed with blunt weapons through which a thief or other miscreant was forced to run as a form of punishment. Hence the expression “to run the gantlet.” A gauntlet was a protective glove of the sort used by knights in armor, which was flung to the ground as a way of issuing a challenge. Hence the expression “to throw down the gauntlet.” Many authorities (Bernstein notably) long argued against the practice of spelling both words “gauntlet,” but I can’t find a dictionary that supports that position any longer and I think it is safe to say that gauntlet is the preferred spelling for the more common senses of the word in America, as it has long been in Britain. Note, however, that there is a very specific use of the term in railroading that does retain gantlet as the preferred spelling. A gantlet in this sense is a section of line where two tracks overlap without switching, to allow passage through a narrow space. Even here gauntlet is an acceptable alternative
Finally, beware of confusing *gauntlet* (or *gantlet*) with *gamut* (which see).

**Gasthaus, Gasthof.** The first is German for an inn or guesthouse; the second is German for a hotel. The plurals are *Gasthäuser* and *Gasthöfe*.

**gendarmes.** Some popular dictionaries define *gendarmes* as French police officers. In fact, gendarmes are soldiers employed in police duties, principally in the countryside. Police officers in French cities and towns are just that—police officers.

**gender.** “A university grievance committee decided that she had been denied tenure because of her gender” (*New York Times*). *Gender*, originally strictly a grammatical term, became in the nineteenth century a euphemism for the convenience of those who found *sex* too disturbing a word to employ. Its use today in that sense is disdained by many authorities as old-fashioned and overdelicate.

**genus, species.** The second is a subgroup of the first. The convention is to capitalize the genus but not the species, as in *Homo sapiens*. The plurals are *genera* and *species*. The traditional order of divisions in taxonomy is kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus, species.

**George Town, Georgetown.** *George Town* is the spelling for the capital of the Cayman Islands and the principal city of the island and state of Penang in Malaysia. Almost all others, including the capital of the South American country Guyana and the district and university in Washington, D.C., use the spelling *Georgetown*.

**germane, relevant, material.** *Germane* and *relevant* are synonymous. Both indicate a pertinence to the matter under discussion. *Material* has the additional connotation of being necessary. A material point is one without which an argument would be incomplete. A germane or relevant point will be worth noting but may not be essential to the argument.

**gerrymander** is to distort or redraw to one’s advantage, especially a political boundary. Not to be confused with *jerry-built*. The term is adapted from the
name of Elbridge Gerry, a Massachusetts governor in the early nineteenth century who did not invent the practice but used it shamelessly. For what it is worth, although Gerry pronounced his name with a hard g (as in gust), gerrymander is normally pronounced with a soft g (as in jerry).

Gerunds are verbs made to function as nouns, as with the italicized words in “I don’t like dancing” and “Cooking is an art.” Two problems commonly arise with gerunds.

1. Sometimes the gerund is unnecessarily set off by an article and a preposition, as here: “They said that the valuing of the paintings could take several weeks” (Daily Telegraph). Deleting the italicized words would make the sentence shorter and more forceful.

   2. When a possessive noun or pronoun (called a genitive) qualifies a gerund, a common type of construction is “They objected to him coming.” Properly it should be “They objected to his coming.” Similarly, “There is little hope of Smith gaining admittance to the club” should be “There is little hope of Smith’s gaining admittance . . .”

   The possessive form is, in short, the preferred form, especially with proper nouns and personal pronouns. For Fowler (who treated the matter under the heading “fused participle”), the possessive was virtually the only form. He insisted, for instance, on “We cannot deny the possibility of anything’s happening” and “This will result in many’s having to go into lodgings.” Most other authorities regard this as a Fowler idiosyncrasy, and the rigor of that position was quietly and sensibly abandoned in the third (and most recent) edition.

Ghanaian for a person or thing from Ghana.

Ghettos. Not -oes.

gild the lily. The passage from Shakespeare’s King John is “To gild refined gold, to paint the lily . . . Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.” Thus it is both wrong and resorting to a woeful cliché to speak of “gilding the lily” in the sense of overdoing something.
**good will, goodwill.** Either form is acceptable in general senses, but it is customary to make it one word when referring to the reputation and trading value of a business.

**gourmand** is a word to be used carefully. Some dictionaries now define it only as a person who likes to eat well, but others equate it with gluttony. Unless you mean to convey a pejorative sense, it would be better to use *gourmet*, *gastronome*, *epicure*, or some other more flattering term.

**graffiti.** “There was graffiti in glorious abundance” (*Daily Mail*). It is probably a losing battle, but *graffiti* is a plural, and the sentence would be better as “There were graffiti . . .” If all you mean is a single embellishment, the term is *graffito*. However, I should also note that fewer and fewer authorities insist on the distinction.

**grammatical error** as a term is sometimes objected to on the grounds that a word or phrase cannot be simultaneously grammatical and erroneous but must be either one or the other. In fact, the primary meaning of *grammatical* is “of or relating to grammar,” which includes errors of grammar, and in any case the expression is well established.

**Granada, Grenada.** The first is the historic city in Spain, the second the Caribbean island state, capital St. George’s. They are pronounced respectively “gr-nah-d and gr-nay-d.”

**grandiloquence,** not -eloquence, for inflated speech.

**greater.** Sometimes a pointer to wordiness, as here: “The cost for a 17-year-old living in the greater London area . . .” (*Times*). “In greater London” or “in the London area” says the same thing as “in the greater London area,” but says it more simply.

**grief, grieve.** “As U.S. travel abroad drops, Europe grieves” (*New York Times* headline). Did it? I wonder. Europe may have been alarmed at, suffered from, or fretted over the loss of American tourist revenue, but is it reasonable to suggest that grief was attached? Similar strong, emotive words—*mourn*, *ravage*, *anguish*, and so on—are better reserved for strong, emotive contexts. See also PLEA, PLEAD.
grievous. The word is not grievous, though it is often so misspelled, as here: “He admitted robbery and causing grievous bodily harm and was jailed for seven years” (Independent). See also mischievous.

grisly, gristly, grizzly. Occasionally and variously confused. The first means horrifying or gruesome. The second applies to meat that is full of gristle. The third means gray, especially gray-haired, and is a cliché when applied to old men.

gross domestic product, gross national product. Gross domestic product is everything produced by a nation during a given period except earnings from overseas. Gross national product is everything produced by a nation during a given period including earnings from overseas. In most contexts, the reader is entitled to an explanation of the difference.

growth. Often used contrarily by economists and those who write about them: “It now looks as if growth will remain stagnant until spring” (Observer); “. . . with the economy moving into a negative growth phase” (Times). Growth obviously indicates expansion. If a thing is shrinking or standing still, growth simply isn’t the word for it.

Guadalupe, Guadeloupe. The cluster of islands in the Caribbean, which together form an overseas department of France, is Guadeloupe. Most other geographical features bearing the name, including a river and a range of mountains in the southwestern United States and towns or cities in California, Mexico, Spain, Peru, and the Azores, spell it Guadalupe.

Guangdong, Guangzhou. Guangdong is the Chinese province formerly known as Kwangtung. Its capital is Guangzhou, formerly Canton.

Guardian, The. “According to reports in the London Times and Manchester Guardian, the duchess was staying at the royal estate in Scotland, Balmoral” (Los Angeles Times). The venerable British newspaper has not been the Manchester Guardian since it moved to London in the 1960s. It is simply The Guardian.

Guiana, Guyana. Some scope for confusion here, particularly if using old references. The name Guiana has at various times been attached to three
contiguous territories on the Atlantic coast of northern South America. The westernmost, British Guiana, is now called Guyana. The central territory, Dutch Guiana, is now Suriname. The easternmost, an overseas department of France, remains French Guiana.

**Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Equatorial Guinea.** They are separate countries, all in west Africa. Guinea was formerly French Guinea. Guinea-Bissau was formerly Portuguese Guinea. Equatorial Guinea was formerly Spanish Guinea.

guttural. Not -er-.
Häagen-Dazs for the ice cream.

Haarlem, Netherlands, but Harlem, New York.

habits. “When in the city, it was his usual habit to dine at Delmonico’s” (American Heritage); “The customary habits of the people of the South Pacific . . .” (Daily Telegraph). Habits are always customary and always usual. That is, of course, what makes them habitual.

had better. “When the London summit meets, foreign ministers better stiffen their sinews” (Guardian). In conditional sentences, the required expression is had better. The error, more common in America than in Britain, is seen again in this advertisement in the New York Times: “It will go 799 miles between gas stations. It better be the world’s most comfortable car.” Make it “It had better be” or at least “It’d better be.”

hail, hale. Hale means robust and vigorous, or to drag or forcibly draw (as in haled into court), in which sense it is related to haul. Hail describes a greeting, a salute, or a downpour (as in “hailstorm” or “hail of bullets”). The expressions are hale and hearty and hail-fellow-well-met.

haka for the Maori war dance widely associated with New Zealand rugby appearances.

hamlet. “Police searched his house in the tiny hamlet of Oechtringen” (Observer). It is in the nature of hamlets to be tiny.

handiwork. Not handy-.

hangar, not -er, for the place where aircraft are stored.
hanged. “It was disclosed that a young white official had been found hanged to death in his cell” (New York Times). “Hanged to death” is a tautology. So too, for that matter, are “starved to death” and “strangled to death.” The writer was correct, however, in saying that the official had been found hanged and not hung. People are hanged; pictures and the like are hung.

Hansard, not Hansard’s, is the unofficial name of the record of proceedings in Britain’s parliament, equivalent to America’s Congressional Record. Formally, it is The Official Report of Parliamentary Debates, but that title is almost never used, even on first reference.

hara-kiri is the correct spelling for the ritual form of suicide involving disembowelment. In Japan, it is normally known as seppuku.

harangue, tirade. Each is sometimes used when the other is intended. A tirade is always abusive and can be directed at one person or at several. A harangue need not be vituperative but may merely be prolonged and tedious. It does, however, require at least two listeners. One person cannot, properly speaking, harangue another.

harass. Note one r, two s’s.

harebrained, harelipped. Not hair-.

hark, but hearken.


Harz Mountains, Germany. Not Hartz.

Hasselblad for the Swedish cameras.

Hawker Siddeley (no hyphen) for the British aviation company.

head over heels is not just a cliché, it is also, when you think about it, a faintly absurd one. Our heads are usually over our heels.

healthy, healthful, salutary. Some authorities maintain that healthy should apply only to those things that possess health and healthful to those that promote
it. Thus we would have “healthy children” but “healthful food” and “healthful exercise.” There is no harm in observing the distinction, but also little to be gained from insisting on it. If we are to become resolute, it would be better to focus on healthy in the sense of big or vigorous, as in “a healthy wage increase,” which is both inexact and overworked.

Salutary has a wider meaning than either of the other words. It too means conducive to health, but it can also apply to anything that is demonstrably beneficial (“a salutary lesson in etiquette”).

“Hear, hear!” is the exclamation of parliamentarians, not “Here, here!”

Hebrew, Yiddish. The two languages have almost nothing in common except that they are spoken primarily by Jewish people. Yiddish (from the German jüdisch, “Jewish”) is a modified German dialect and thus a part of the Indo-European family of languages. Hebrew is a Semitic tongue and therefore more closely related to Arabic. Yiddish writers sometimes use the Hebrew alphabet, but the two languages are no more closely related than, say, English and Swahili.

Heidsieck for the champagne.

heir apparent, heir presumptive. The first inherits no matter what; the second inherits only if a nearer relation is not born first.

Helens, Mount St. (no apostrophe) for the volcanic mountain in Washington State.

hemorrhage. Note -rr-. 

hemorrhoids. Note -rr-.

Hennessy for the cognac.

hiccup, hiccough. The first is now generally the preferred spelling.

highfalutin (no apostrophe) is the correct—or at least the standard—spelling, though many dictionaries also accept highfaluting, highfaluten, and hifalutin. The word has been around for about 130 years but is still considered informal by most sources. Its origin is uncertain.
high jinks  (two words) is the usual spelling, though some dictionaries also accept hijinks. The derivation is unknown, but the term is not related to (or to be confused with) jinx, as in bad luck. It can be used as either a singular or a plural.

Hindi, Hindu, Hinduism, Hindustani.  Hindi is the main language of India and Hindustani is its main dialect. Hinduism is the main religious and social system of India. Hindu describes a follower of Hinduism.

hindrance.  Not -erance.

hippie, hippy.  The first refers to a person of nonconformist lifestyle, the second to someone with large hips.

hippopotamuses  is the plural of hippopotamus.

Hirshhorn Museum,  Washington, D.C. Note -hh-.

historic, historical.  “The Landmarks Preservation Commission voted yesterday to create a historical district on a gilded stretch of Manhattan’s East Side” (New York Times). Generally speaking, something that makes history or is part of history, as in the example above, is historic. Something that is based on history or describes history is historical (“a historical novel”). A historic judicial ruling is one that makes history; a historical ruling is based on precedent. There are, however, some exceptions to the rule—notably in accountancy (“historic costs”) and, curiously, in grammar (“historic tenses”). (See also A, AN.)

hitchhike, hitchhiker.  Note -hh-.

hitherto.  “In 1962, the regime took the hitherto unthinkable step of appropriating land” (Daily Telegraph). Hitherto means “until now,” so in the example cited it is out of step with the sentence’s tense. The writer meant thitherto (“until then”), but theretofore would have been better, and previously better still.

hoard, horde.  Often confused, as here: “Chrysler Corp. has a cash horde of $1.5 billion” (Time). An accumulation of valuables, often hidden, is a hoard. Horde originally described nomadic tribes but now applies to any crowd, particularly to a thronging and disorganized one (“hordes of Christmas shoppers”).
hoary, not -ey, for something that is gray or aged.

Hobson’s choice is sometimes taken to signify a dilemma or difficult decision but in fact means having no choice at all. It is said to derive from a sixteenth-century stablekeeper in Cambridge, England, named Thomas Hobson, who hired out horses in strict rotation. The customer was allowed to take the one nearest the stable door or none at all.

Hodgkin’s disease. Occasionally mispunctuated, as here: “Two years later, he was found to be suffering from Hodgkins’ disease” (Newsweek). The disease was first described by a British physician named Thomas Hodgkin.

Hoffmann, The Tales of, is the title of the 1881 opera by Jacques Offenbach. Note -ff-, -nn-.

hoi polloi. Two problems here. The first is that hoi polloi means “the masses, the common populace,” and not “the elite,” as is often thought. The second problem is that in Greek hoi means “the” so to speak of “the hoi polloi” is tantamount to saying “the the masses.” You must therefore use it without the definite article or substitute another, less troublesome term.

holocaust. In Greek the word means “burnt whole,” and generally speaking, it is better reserved for disasters involving fiery destruction. You should not, for instance, use the word to describe the devastation wrought by a hurricane or mudslide. However, a clear exception is in references to the slaughter of Jews by Germany during World War II, when it describes the entire extermination process. In such contexts, the word is normally capitalized.

home, hone. “But Milosevic, ever the master tactician, had honed in on one of the Tribunal’s shakiest stanchions” (New Yorker). Hone means to sharpen (as in honing a knife) or, more rarely, to complain or yearn for. The term for seeking out a target, as in the example, is home.

homely. Occasionally a source of confusion between Britons and Americans. In Britain (and in most of its former dominions), the word means comfortable and appealing, having the warm and familiar qualities associated with a home. In America, for obscure reasons, it has long signified something that is unattractive, particularly in respect to the human face. If the audience is international and
confusion is likely to follow, a more neutral term is clearly advised. In any case, to describe someone as homely in the American sense is inescapably subjective and generally uncharitable, and may cause needless hurt.

**homonym, homophone.** Both describe words that have strong similarities of sound or spelling but different meanings. A *homophone* is a word that sounds like another but has a different meaning or spelling, or both. A *homonym* is a word that has a different meaning but the same spelling or sound. Thus *blue* and *blew* are both homonyms and homophones. However, *bow* as in a ship and *bow* as in a tie are homonyms (because they are spelled the same) but not homophones (because they have different pronunciations). In short, unless the intention is to emphasize the equivalence of pronunciations, *homonym* is generally the better word.

**honorariums,** not *honoraria,* is usually the preferred plural for *honorarium.*

**hopefully.** “To travel hopefully is a better thing than to arrive.” Seventy or eighty years ago that sentence by Robert Louis Stevenson would have suggested only one interpretation: that it is better to travel filled with hope than to actually reach your destination. Today, however, it could also be read as meaning “to travel is, I hope, better than to arrive.”

This extended sense of *hopefully* has been condemned with some passion by many authorities, among them Philip Howard, who calls it “ambiguous and obscure, as well as illiterate and ugly.” Many others, notably Bernstein and Gowers, accept it, though usually only grudgingly and often with restrictions attached.

Most of those who object to *hopefully* in its looser sense do so on the argument that it is a misused modal auxiliary—that is to say, that it fails to modify the elements it should. Take the sentence “Hopefully the sun will come out soon.” As constructed, this sentence suggests (at least to a literal-minded person) that it is the sun whose manner is hopeful, not yours or mine. After all, you would hardly say, “Believably the sun will come out soon” if you believed it might, or “Thinkingly the sun will come out soon” if you thought as much.

The shortcoming of this argument is that those writers who scrupulously avoid *hopefully* in such constructions do not hesitate to use at least a dozen other words
—apparently, presumably, happily, sadly, mercifully, thankfully, and so on—in precisely the same way. In Paradigms Lost, the American critic John Simon roundly disdained the looser hopefully, yet elsewhere he wrote, “Marshall Sahlins, who professes anthropology at the University of Chicago, errs some fifteen times in an admittedly long piece.” That admittedly is every bit as unattached as any hopefully ever was.

To accept the one while excusing the other is, I submit, curious and illogical and more than a little reminiscent of those Victorian purists who insisted that laughable should be laugh-at-able and that grammatical virtue would be served by turning reliable into relionable.

There are, however, two other grounds for regarding the unattached hopefully with suspicion. The first is that, as in the Stevenson quotation at the beginning of this entry, it introduces a possibility of ambiguity. Gowers cites this sentence in reference to a cricket match: “Our team will start their innings hopefully immediately after tea.” It isn’t possible to say whether hopefully refers to the team’s frame of mind or to the time it will start batting.

A second objection is to the lameness of the word. If a newspaper editorial says, “Hopefully the actors’ strike will end today,” who exactly is doing the hoping? The writer? The actors? All right-minded people? Too often the word is used as no more than an easy escape from taking direct responsibility for a sentiment and as such is better avoided.

hors d’oeuvre for an appetizer. The plural is hors d’oeuvres.

hovercraft (no capital). The name is no longer a trademark.

Howards End (no apostrophe) for the 1910 novel by E. M. Forster.

Hudson Bay, Hudson Strait, Hudson River, but Hudson’s Bay Company.

hue and cry, not hew, for an uproar. Though it may have its place occasionally, in most contexts the expression at least tilts toward the clichéd.

humerus is the spelling for the bone between the elbow and shoulder. The plural is humeri.
I, me. “It was a bizarre little scenario—the photographer and me ranged on one side, the petulant actor and his agent on the other” (*Sunday Times*). At least the next sentence didn’t begin “Me turned to the actor and asked him . . .” Make it, obviously, “the photographer and I.”

Probably the most common problem with *I* and *me*, and certainly the most widely disputed, is deciding whether to write “It was *I*” or “It was *me*.” The more liberal authorities are inclined to allow “It was *me*” on the argument that it is more colloquial and less affected, while the prescriptivists lean toward “It was *I*” on the indisputable grounds that it is more grammatical. A point generally overlooked by both sides is that “It is *I*” and like constructions are often somewhat graceless and wordy. Instead of writing “It was he who was nominated” or “It is she whom I love,” why not simply say, “He was nominated” or “I love her”?

Things become more troublesome still when a subordinate clause is influenced contradictorily by a personal pronoun and a relative pronoun, as here: “It is not you who is [are?] angry.” *Is* is grammatically correct, but again the sentence would be less stilted if recast as “You are not the one who is angry” or “You aren’t angry.” See also *it*.

*idée fixe* (Fr.) for an obsession or fixation. The plural is *idées fixes*.

*idiosyncrasy*. One of the most commonly misspelled of all words, especially in the plural, and it is always misspelled in the same way: “Most of the statistics about Texas reflect the idiosyncracies of the Lone Star State, not George W. Bush’s achievements or failures” (*Economist*); “At the same time, the international fashion world . . . has accepted the idiosyncracies of the British” (*New York Times*); “Moses’s idiosyncracies were subject to the sort of jocular condescension that attends the cracked verbal clarities of Yogi Berra” (*New
Yorker). Note that the penultimate consonant in the examples should be an s, not a c.

i.e. See E.G., I.E.

if. Problems often arise in deciding whether if is introducing a subjunctive clause (“If I were . . .”) or an indicative one (“If I was . . .”). The distinction is straightforward. When if introduces a notion that is hypothetical or improbable or clearly untrue, the verb should be in the subjunctive: “If I were king . . .”; “If he were in your shoes . . .” But when the if is introducing a thought that is true or could well be true, the mood should be indicative: “If I was happy then, I certainly am not now.” One small hint: if the sentence contains would or wouldn’t, the mood is subjunctive, as in “If I were you, I wouldn’t take the job.” See also SUBJUNCTIVES.

if and when. Almost always unnecessary. Choose one or the other.

ileum, ilium. The ileum is part of the small intestine; the ilium is part of the pelvis and, when capitalized, is also the Latin name for Troy.

imply, infer. “Speaking on ABC-TV’s Good Morning America, Mrs. Bush inferred that Clinton had brought disrespect to the presidency” (Los Angeles Times). According to nearly all authorities, on both sides of the Atlantic, the word there should be implied, not inferred. Imply means to suggest: “He implied that I was a fool.” Infer means to deduce: “After three hours of waiting, we inferred that they weren’t coming.” A speaker implies, a listener infers. The distinction is useful and, in careful writing nowadays, expected. However, there is not a great deal of historical basis for it. Many great writers, among them Milton, Sir Thomas More, Jane Austen, and Shakespeare, freely used infer where we would today insist on imply. Indeed, until as late as 1976, the Concise Oxford Dictionary treated the words as interchangeable. Nonetheless, to use infer where most educated people now expect imply is to invite derision.

important, importantly. “But more importantly, his work was instrumental in eradicating cholera” (Sunday Telegraph). Some authorities condemn importantly with the argument that the sentence contains an ellipsis of thought—that in effect it is saying, “But [what is] more important . . .” Others contend that importantly functions as a sentence adverb, modifying the whole expression, in much the
same way as *happily* does in “Happily, it didn’t rain.” Both points are grammatically defensible, so the choice of which word to use must be entirely a matter of preference.

**imports, exports.** Here is a common lapse in an unexpected place: “America’s booming economy has sucked in imports from abroad” (*Economist*). It is of course implicit in imports that their source is foreign, so delete “from abroad.” Similar phrases involving *exports*, such as “British exports to overseas countries . . . fell slightly again last month” (*Guardian*), equally cry out for pruning.

**impractical, impracticable, unpractical.** If a thing could be done but isn’t worth doing, it is impractical or unpractical (the words mean the same). If it can’t be done at all, it’s impracticable (the word means “incapable of being put into practice”).

**in, into, in to.** Generally, *in* indicates a fixed position (“she was in the house”) while *into* indicates movement toward a fixed position (“she went into the house”). There are, however, many exceptions (e.g., “she put the money in her pocket”). As so often with idiom, there is no describable pattern to these exceptions; it is just the way it is.

Whether to write *into* as one word or two also sometimes causes problems. The simple rule is that *in to* is correct when *in* is an adverb, but the distinction can perhaps best be seen in paired examples: “He turned himself into [one word] an accomplished artist” but “The criminal turned himself in to [two words] the police.”

**inadmissible.** Not -able.

**inchoate.** Probably because of the similarity in spelling to *chaotic* and in pronunciation to *incoherent*, people sometimes take the word to mean disorderly or disorganized. In fact it means incipient, undeveloped, just starting. An inchoate enterprise is likely to be disorganized, but the disorderliness is not what makes it inchoate.

**incline.** As a verb, *incline* indicates a conscious decision, as in “They were inclined to go to Greece for the summer.” When happenstance rather than decision is the determining factor, *incline* is at best a poor choice, as it was here:
“Roads are inclined to deteriorate during bad weather” (Daily Telegraph).

**include** indicates that what is to follow is only part of a greater whole. To use it when you are describing a totality is sloppy, as here: “The 630 job losses include 300 in Redcar and 330 in Port Talbot” (Times).

**incomprehensible.** Not -able.

**inculcate** means to persistently impress a habit upon or belief into another person. You inculcate an idea, not a person. “My father inculcated me with a belief in democracy” should be “My father inculcated in me a belief in democracy.”

**individually.** “The new structures should, by contrast, last almost indefinitely” (Newsweek). *Indefinitely* in the sense of “for a very long time” is almost always better avoided in the context of human achievements. It is often exasperatingly vague. Did the writer here mean that the new structures would last for a million years, which seems decidedly unlikely, or merely for a century or two? There is obviously quite a difference. The word means only “without prescribed limits,” so strictly speaking, the sentence is telling us that the structures may last almost forever or they may collapse next week. “Almost indefinitely,” incidentally, is impossible.

**indexes, indices.** Either is acceptable, though some dictionaries favor *indices* for technical applications.

**indict, indite.** Very occasionally confused, as here: “The American Family Association persuaded the city council to indite the museum director and his board for obscenity” (Independent). To lay a formal charge—the sense intended here—is to indict. *Indite*, a word rare almost to the point of obsolescence, means to set down in writing.

**indispensable.** Not -ible.

**individual** is unexceptionable when you are contrasting one person with an organization or body of people (“How can one individual hope to rectify the evils of society?”). But as a simple synonym for *person* (“Do you see that individual standing over there?”), it is still frowned upon by many authorities as
casual and inelegant.

**inflation** has become so agreeably quiescent in recent years that the word and its several variant forms are much less troublesome than they were when the first edition of this book appeared. However (and just in case), a few definitions may come in handy. **Inflation** means that the money supply and prices are rising. **Hyperinflation** means that they are rising rapidly (at an annual rate of at least 20 percent). **Deflation** means that they are falling, and **reflation** that they are being pushed up again after a period of deflation. **Stagflation** means that prices are rising while output is stagnant. **Disinflation,** a word so vague in sense to most readers that it is almost always better avoided, means that prices are rising but at a rate slower than before. Finally, bear in mind that if the rate of inflation was 4.5 percent last month and 3.5 percent this month, it does not mean that prices are falling; they are still rising, but at a slower rate.

**innocent.** “She and four other inmates have pleaded innocent to the tax charges” (*Boston Globe*). It is perhaps pedantic to insist on it too rigorously on all occasions, but it is worth noting that in the United States, as in Britain, people do not actually plead innocent, since one of the hallmarks of our legal system is that innocence is presumed. Strictly, they plead guilty or not guilty.

**in order to.** A wordy locution even in the hands of an authority, as here: “Grammar may be defined as the system of principles . . . according to which words must be patterned in order to be understood” (Shipley, *In Praise of English*). In nearly every instance, removing *in order* tightens the sentence without altering the sense. See also IN, INTO, IN TO.

**insects.** “The famous local danger is the funnel web spider, the most poisonous insect in the world” (*Bryson, In a Sunburned Country*). I can affirm from experience that if you describe spiders as insects, you will be swiftly informed from many quarters that spiders are in fact arachnids, a different class of creature altogether; it also includes mites, ticks, and scorpions, none of which should be described as insects. Although some dictionaries (*American Heritage*, for one) allow the looser usage in informal or nontechnical writing, it is unquestionably incorrect and thus better avoided almost always. If you need to describe insects and spiders together, the word is **arthropods**.

**insidious, invidious.** *Insidious* indicates the stealthy or tardily detected spread
of something undesirable ("an insidious leak in the pipe"). Invidious means offensive or inviting animosity ("I was angered by his invidious remarks").

**insofar** is the normal American spelling. In Britain, it is normally *in so far*.

**intense, intensive.** *Intense* should describe things that are heavy or extreme or occur to a high degree ("intense sunlight," "intense downpour"). *Intensive* implies a concentrated focus ("intensive care," "an intensive search"). Although the two words often come to the same thing, they needn’t. An intense bombardment, as Fowler pointed out, is a severe one. An intensive bombardment is one directed at a small (or relatively small) area.

**International Atomic Energy Agency.** Not *Authority*.

**international courts.** Understandably, these sometimes cause confusion. The International Court of Justice, or World Court, in The Hague, Netherlands, is an offspring of the United Nations and deals with disputes between or among UN member states. The European Court of Justice, in Luxembourg, is a European Union institution dealing exclusively with disputes involving EU member states. The European Court of Human Rights, in Strasbourg, France, addresses issues of civil liberties arising from the European Convention on Human Rights. It has no connection with the United Nations or the European Union.

**International Olympic Committee.** Not *Olympics*.

**internecine.** For more than two hundred years writers have used *internecine* in the sense of a costly or self-destructive conflict, even though etymologically the word signifies only a slaughter or massacre, without any explicit sense of cost to the victor. For this small error, we can thank Samuel Johnson, who was misled by the prefix *inter*- and defined the word as “endeavouring mutual destruction.” However, it has been misused for so long that it would be pedantic and wildly optimistic to try to enforce its original meaning. As Philip Howard has noted, “The English language cannot be regulated so as to avoid offending the susceptibilities of classical scholars.” He does suggest, however, that the word should be reserved for bloody and violent disputes and not mere squabblings.

**interval.** “The training period was still three years, an interval widely regarded in the industry as being unrealistically long” (cited by Gowers). An interval is
the period between two events.

**intrigue.** Originally *intrigue* signified underhanded plotting and nothing else. The looser meaning of arousing or fascinating (“We found the lecture intriguing”) is now established. It is, however, greatly overworked and almost always better replaced by a more telling word.

**invariably** does not mean *frequently* or *usually*, as was intended here: “*Supersede* is yet another word that is invariably misspelled” (*Chicago Tribune*). It means fixed, constant, not subject to change—in short, without variance. Night invariably follows day, but no word is invariably misspelled.

**inveigh, inveigle.** Occasionally confused. The first means to speak strongly against (“She inveighed against the rise in taxes”). The second means to entice or cajole (“They inveigled an invitation to the party”).

**irony, sarcasm.** Irony is the use of words to convey a contradiction between the literal and intended meanings. Sarcasm is very like irony except that it is more stinging. Whereas the primary intent behind irony is to amuse, with sarcasm it is to wound or score points.

**irregardless** is not a real word, though one or two dictionaries do now, lamentably, acknowledge it. Make it *regardless*.

**-ise/-ize.** Since about the time of Noah Webster, American users have been strongly inclined to use -*ize* terminations on verbs such as *recognize* and *conceptualize*, while in Britain -*ise* endings remain more common, even though the *Oxford English Dictionary* and many publishers and periodicals favor -*ize*. Even under the -*ize* system, though, and even in America, certain verbs continue always to end in -*ise*, of which the following are the main ones: *advertise, apprise, chastise, circumcise, comprise, compromise, demise, despise, devise, disguise, excise, exercise, franchise, improvise, incise, merchandise, reprise, supervise, surmise, surprise, televise*.

A separate issue concerns objections often raised by authorities to words like *finalize, prioritize*, and the aforementioned *conceptualize*. Although the English language has been forming such words for centuries—*bastardize*, for instance, dates from the 1500s—new formations almost always encounter sustained
opposition. Strunk in 1935 attacked prioritize and customize. Gowers in 1965 expressed dislike for finalize, among many others. Several usage books in Britain continue to disdain hospitalize and burglarize, though most American authorities accept them without comment.

The arguments brought against many of these formations can have an ironic ring, because what is elsewhere welcomed as a virtue—brevity—is suddenly considered not so important. Certainly there can be no denying that prioritize is shorter than “make a priority of” and hospitalize less cumbersome than “admit to a hospital.” The only honest objection to such words is that they are jarring or faddish. The protests are more convincing where a short word already exists. There is no special excuse for moistenize when we already have moisten or for finalize when we have finish. The general principle, as with most matters of usage, should be that the word should not draw undue attention to itself by its novelty or air of contrivance.

**it.** Sentences that begin with it are almost always worth a second look. Oftentimes an anticipatory or “dummy” it is unobjectionable (“It seems to me,” “It began to rain,” “It is widely believed that”), but just as often it is no more than a sign of careless or tedious writing, as here: “It was Mr. Bechtel who was the more peripatetic of the two. . . . It was under his direction that the annual reports began” (New York Times). Both sentences would be shorter and more forceful if “It was” and the relative pronouns (respectively who and that) were removed, making them “Mr. Bechtel was the more peripatetic of the two” and “Under his direction the annual reports began.”

**iterate, reiterate.** Since reiterate means to repeat, many people naturally assume that iterate means simply to state. In fact, it also means to repeat, a sense that appears not to have been intended here: “Union officials said they would iterate their demands at the weekend meeting, but not before” (Los Angeles Times). A separate but common fault with reiterate is seen here: “She hopes her message to the markets, reiterated again at the weekend, will be enough to prevent the pound sliding further” (Times). Again is always superfluous with re-words (reiterate, repeat, reaffirm) and should be deleted.

**its, it’s.** The distinction between these two ought not to trouble a ten-year-old, yet errors abound, particularly outside formal writing. Its is the possessive form of it: “Put each book in its place.” It’s is the contraction of it is: “The beauty of
solar power is that it’s environmentally friendly.”
James’s, St.  See COURT OF ST. JAMES’S.

**jargon, argot, lingua franca.** At a conference of sociologists some years ago, *love* was defined as “the cognitive-affective state characterized by intrusive fantasizing concerning reciprocity of amorous feelings by the object of the amorance.” That is *jargon*—the practice of never calling a spade a spade when you might instead call it a manual earth-restructuring implement. So long as it circulates only among a given profession, jargon is usually unobjectionable and frequently useful, since every profession needs its own form of shorthand. But all too often it escapes into the wider world, so that we encounter “attitudinal constructs” when what is meant is *attitudes* and “optimally consonant patterns of learning” for a *sound education*. In this sense, jargon is always better avoided.

*Argot* was originally the language of thieves, but has, like jargon, come to mean a way of communicating peculiar to a particular group. *Lingua franca* (literally “the Frankish tongue”) is any language or mixture of languages that serves as a common means of communication among diverse parties. English, for instance, is the lingua franca of international air travel. See also CReOLE, PATOIS.

**jeep, Jeep.** Use *jeep* generally for army vehicles, but *Jeep* specifically for the brand name of cars produced by the German-American company Daimler-Chrysler.

**jerry-built, jury-rigged.** Occasionally confused, as here: “In the fall of 1891, he jerry-rigged what’s believed to be the first football headgear, a chamois skullcap secured by a chin strap” (*Sports Illustrated*). Something that is built cheaply and sloppily, without regard to quality, is *jerry-built*. Something that is made in haste, with whatever materials are at hand, usually as a temporary or emergency measure, is *jury-rigged*. 
**Johns Hopkins** (note s on both) is the name of the university and medical center in Baltimore.

**join together, link together.** The Bible and marriage ceremonies notwithstanding, *join together* is almost always tautological. Similarly *linked together*, even when written by as eminent an authority as C. T. Onions: “The first members of a group linked together by one of the above conjunctions . . .” (in *Modern English Syntax*).

**Joneses, keeping up with the.** Not *Jones’* or *Jones’s* or other common variants.

**Jonson, Ben,** not *Johnson,* for the English dramatist and poet.

**Juilliard School of Music,** New York City. Note *Jui-*.

**just deserts,** not *desserts*. The expression has nothing to do with the sweet course after dinner. It comes from the French for *deserve,* which may help you to remember that it has just one middle *s.*
Katharine’s Docks, St., London. Note the unusual spelling of Katharine.

Kerrey, Kerry. Confusion sometimes arises in distinguishing between the politicians Bob Kerrey of Nebraska and John Kerry of Massachusetts. Both are Democrats and both were born in 1943. Kerry is a former lieutenant governor of Massachusetts and at the time of writing was serving his third term as a U.S. senator for the state. Kerrey is a former governor of Nebraska and was a U.S. senator for the state until he retired in 2000 to become president of New School University in New York City. In 2001, Kerrey admitted having been part of a military action in Vietnam in 1969 in which innocent civilians were murdered by U.S. troops.

Khrushchev, Nikita. Few errors make a publication look more careless than misspelling the name of a world leader, and few leaders’ names have been misspelled more frequently or variously than that of the late Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev. Note that the surname has three h’s.

kibbutz, kibitz. The first refers to an Israeli communal settlement (plural kibbutzim). The second is to watch at cards or some other activity, often in an interfering manner.

kind. “Those are the kind of numbers that easily solve the mystery” (New York Daily News). Kind and kinds and their antecedents should always enjoy what grammarians call concord. Just as we say “this hat” but “those hats,” so the writer above should have said, “Those are the kinds of numbers” or “This is the kind of number.” Shakespeare, for what it is worth, didn’t always observe the distinction. In King Lear he wrote, “These kind of knaves . . .”

kindergarten, but kindergartner (not -gartener).
Kingsford-Smith (hyphen) for the airport in Sydney, Australia, but Sir Charles Kingsford Smith (no hyphen) for the aviator after whom it was named.

kith and kin. Your kin are your relatives. Your kith are your relatives and acquaintances. Individually the words are antiquated. Together they are hackneyed.

Kmart for the store group. The formal name is Kmart Corporation.

Knight Commander of the Order of the Bath for the British honorary title. Note the second the.

knot. “The yacht was doing about nine knots an hour, according to Mr. Starr” (New York Times). Because knot means “nautical miles an hour,” the time element is implicit in it. The sentence as written is telling us that the yacht was progressing at nine nautical miles an hour an hour. Either delete “an hour” or change knots to nautical miles. A nautical mile equals 1.15 land miles, and in most contexts the average reader will appreciate having that difference elucidated.

koala bears is always wrong. Koalas are marsupials and have no relation to bears. Just call them koalas.

krona, krone, etc. The currencies of the Scandinavian nations cause occasional confusion, as in this headline in The Times of London: “Sweden devalues kroner by 10 percent.” The Swedes call it a krona (plural kronor). In Denmark and Norway it is a krone (plural kroner). In Iceland, it is also a krona, but the plural is kronur.

Krugerrand for the South African gold coin (used as an investment vehicle and not as a currency). Note -rr-.

kusdh. “He did not feel he had received the kudos that were his due” (Washington Post). Kudos, a Greek word meaning fame or glory, is singular. Thus it should be “the kudos that was his due.” There is no such thing, incidentally, as one kudo.
lackadaisical  for something done without enthusiasm. Not lacks-.

La Guardia Airport,  New York. It is worth noting that some users make the name one word, as in Fiorello H. LaGuardia Community College in Queens, but the two-word form is more general for both the man and any entities named for him, particularly the airport. For the record, Fiorello Henry La Guardia (1882–1947) was a U.S. congressman from 1917 to 1921 and 1923 to 1933 and mayor of New York City from 1934 to 1945.

languid, limpid.  Not to be confused. Limpid means clear, calm, untroubled (“a limpid stream”). It has nothing to do with being limp or listless—meanings that are covered by languid.

last, latest.  Various authorities have issued various strictures against using last when you mean latest. Clearly, last should not be used when it might be misinterpreted, as in “the last episode of the television series” when you mean the most recent but not the final one. However, last in the sense of latest has a certain force of idiom behind it, and when ambiguity is unlikely (as in “He spoke about it often during the last presidential election campaign”), a reasonable measure of latitude should be granted.


lawful, legal.  In many contexts the words can be used interchangeably, but not always. Lawful means permissible under the law (“lawful behavior,” “lawful protest”). Legal has that meaning plus the additional sense of “relating to the law,” as in “legal system” and “legal profession.”

lay, lie.  “Laying on his back, Dalton used a long exposure of two seconds so as
to achieve maximum depth of field” (*Photography* magazine). Unless Dalton was producing eggs, he was lying on his back. *Lay* and *lie*, in all their manifestations, are a constant source of errors. There are no simple rules for dealing with them. You must either commit their various forms to memory or avoid them altogether. The forms are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>LIE</th>
<th>LAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I lie down; I am lying down.</td>
<td>I lay the book on the table.</td>
<td>I say.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Last night I lay down to sleep.</td>
<td>Yesterday I laid the book on the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>I have lain in bed all day.</td>
<td>I have already laid the book on the table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The most common error is to say, “If you’re not feeling well, go upstairs and lay down.” It should be “lie down.”

**lead, led.** Confusion between the two is astonishingly—and really inexcusably—common, as here: “The programme in Tissue Engineering will be lead by Professor Tim Hardingham, Manchester and Professor David Williams, Liverpool” (*New Scientist* advertisement). The past-tense spelling of the verb *lead* is *led*. It is also worth mentioning in passing that “Manchester” in the example should have a comma after it as well as before.

**Lectern, podium, dais, rostrum.** The first two are frequently confused. A lectern is the stand on which a speaker places his or her notes. A podium is the raised platform on which the speaker and lectern stand. A podium can hold only one person. A platform for several people is a dais. A rostrum is any platform; it may be designed for one speaker or for several.

**Legend, legendary.** The British biographer Lytton Strachey once described Florence Nightingale as “a living legend in her own lifetime” (as opposed, apparently, to a dead legend in her own lifetime) and thereby created a cliché that we could well do without. Properly, a legend is a story that may have some basis in fact but is mostly fanciful. King Arthur and Robin Hood are legendary figures. The term can fairly be extended to those people or things whose fame is such as to inspire myths (Marilyn Monroe, Babe Ruth, Rolls-Royces), but the word is often used too loosely, as here: “Doctors call it Munchhausen’s syndrome, after the legendary . . . Baron Hieronymous Karl Friedrich von Münchhausen, who spun fantastic and exaggerated stories about his experiences
as a German cavalry officer” (*New York Times*). To attach the word to a man whose fame exists largely within medical circles is to use it too casually.

**Leiden, Leyden.** The first is the usual spelling for the Dutch town, the second for the scientific instrument known as a Leyden jar.

**lend, loan.** *Loan* as a verb (“He loaned me some money”) is now more or less standard in America and is found increasingly throughout the rest of the English-speaking world. However, most British authorities and some American ones continue to urge that the usage be resisted. Bergen and Cornelia Evans, in contrast, find *loan* as a verb entirely unobjectionable, pointing out that it has been so used for eight hundred years. Nor, they add, is it a sloppy Americanism, as is sometimes suggested; it appeared in an Act of Parliament in Britain as long ago as 1542.

**level, mark** are often pointlessly employed. “Share prices once again fell below the 600 level” (*Guardian*) says no more than “fell below 600.” Similarly *mark*, as in “This year's attendances have been hovering around the 25,000 mark” (*Sunday Times*). Make it “hovering around 25,000.”

**Lewis, Meriwether,** not -whether, -weather, for the coleader of the Lewis and Clark expedition of 1804–1806.

**Lhasa** for the capital of Tibet, but **Lhasa apso** for the breed of dog.

**liable, likely, apt, prone.** All four indicate probability, but they carry distinctions worth noting. *Apt* is better reserved for general probabilities (“It is apt to snow in January”) and *likely* for specific ones (“It is likely to snow today”). *Liable* and *prone* are better used to indicate a probability arising as a regrettable consequence: “People who drink too much are prone to heart disease”; “If you don’t pay your taxes, you are liable to get caught.” A few older usage guides suggest that *prone* should apply only to people, but that seems to be an archaic view; the 1982 *Concise Oxford Dictionary*, for instance, cites “strike-prone industries” as an acceptable usage.

A separate problem with *likely* is seen in this sentence: “Cable experts say the agreement will likely strengthen the company’s position” (*Washington Post*). When used as an adverb, *likely* needs to be accompanied by one of four helping
words: very, quite, more, or most. Thus the sentence should say “will very likely strengthen.” A greater improvement still would be to recast and tighten the phrase entirely: “Cable experts say the agreement is likely to strengthen the company’s position.” See also INCLINE.

**libel, slander.** Although nearly all dictionaries define *libel* merely as a statement that defames a person or damages his or her reputation, it is worth remembering that it must do so unreasonably or inaccurately. It is the wrongness of a contention that makes it libelous, not the harshness or hostility of it. Nor is it possible, strictly speaking, to libel the dead, so the term was used loosely here: “The author’s breezy assertion that he [Thomas Jefferson] fathered a child by his slave Sally Hemings is regarded by many in the society as a gross and terrible libel” (Guardian). Although a libel usually takes the form of a written utterance, drawings and other visual depictions may also be libelous. In all cases, a libel must be published (the word comes from the Latin *libellus*, meaning “little book”). When defamatory remarks are merely spoken, the term to describe the act is *slander*.

**licence, license.** For certain words that can function as both noun and verb, it was once common to distinguish the two forms by varying the penultimate letter, using a *c* in the noun form and an *s* in the verb. In America the practice is still preserved in a few pairings, such as *advice/advise*, *device/devise*, and *prophecy/prophesy*. In most other cases, however, we have abandoned the custom. This is a somewhat roundabout way of explaining why the British distinguish between *licence* as a noun (“a licence to sell wines and spirits”) and *license* as a verb (“licensed premises”), while we in the United States opt for *license* for all forms. A similar Anglo-American split governs our spellings of *practice* and *practise* (which see).

**Liechtenstein.** Misspelled much too often, as here: “The inspectors are interested also in the considerable amount of unsolicited purchases of Guinness shares coming from Swiss and Lichtenstein-based institutions” (Times). For what it is worth, the first syllable of the name is pronounced “leak,” not “lick.”

**lifelong.** “Jesse Bishop was a lifelong drug addict who had spent 20 of his 46 years in prison” (Guardian). You might be a lifelong resident of New York or a lifelong churchgoer or, at a stretch, a lifelong lover of music. But unless the unfortunate Mr. Bishop turned to drugs at a remarkably early age, *lifelong* is
much too literal a word to describe his addiction.

**lighted, lit.** Either is correct. *Lighted*, however, is more usual when the word is being used as an adjective (“a lighted torch”).

**light-years.** “So protracted have the discussions been that their progress should almost be measured not in years but in light-years” (*Guardian*). Though the intention here was obviously facetious, it is as well to remember that light-years are a measure of distance, not time. In temporal terms, one earth year and one light-year are the same.

**like, as.** Problems often arise in choosing between *like* and *as*. Here are two examples, both from the *New York Times* and both wrong: “Advertising agencies may appear as [make it *like*] homespun enterprises to the American public”; “On the surface it looks like [as *if*] all of the parties are preparing for serious bargaining.”

On the face of it, the rule is simple: *as* and *as *if are always followed by a verb; *like* never is. Therefore you would say, “He plays tennis like an expert” (no verb after *like*), but “He plays tennis as if his life depended on it” (verb *depended*).

Although that is the rule, you may wish to suspend it at times. Except in the most formal writing, sentences like the one you are now reading and the two that follow should not be considered objectionable: “She looks just like her mother used to”; “He can’t dance like he used to.” There is also one apparent inconsistency in the rule, in that *like* may be used when it comes between *feel* and an -ing verb: “He felt like walking”; “I feel like going abroad this year.”

A separate problem with *like* is that it often leads writers to make false comparisons, as here: “Like the Prime Minister, his opposition to increased public spending is fierce” (*Daily Telegraph*). The writer has inadvertently likened “Prime Minister” to “opposition.” In order to liken person to person, the sentence needs to be recast: “Like the Prime Minister, he is fiercely opposed to increased public spending,” or words to that effect.

**Limbourg, Limburg.** The first is a province of Belgium, the second a province of the Netherlands. The cheese is Limburg or Limburger.
**limited** means constrained, set within bounds. Unless the sentence includes the idea of imposing a limit, the word is better avoided. It is reasonable enough to say that a special offer is available for a limited time, but to write that “there was a limited demand for tickets” is absurd when what is meant is that fewer customers than had been hoped for showed up.

**Linnaean** for the system of naming plants and animals by genus and species (e.g., *Homo sapiens*). Some dictionaries accept *Linnean* as an alternative spelling. The term comes from the Swedish botanist Carl Linné (1707–1778), who chose to Latinize his name as Carolus Linnaeus. For the rules of application concerning the Linnaean system, see *GENUS*, *SPECIES*.

**lion’s share** is better avoided unless you wish to convey some suggestion of a greedy or selfish accumulation, a sense not intended here: “The Territory, which controls the lion’s share of Australia’s high-grade uranium reserves . . .” (*Australian*). It is also, of course, a cliché. Why not say “most” or “the larger part” or whatever is appropriate?

**lira, lire.** “30,000 lira buy at least 30,000 glorious calories at all-you-can-eatery” (*Chicago Tribune* headline). The plural of *lira* is *lire*. A second problem with the headline is that sums of money are normally treated as singular. Thus it should be “30,000 lire buys”—though of course now no amount of lire will buy you anything, as the currency was replaced in Italy by the euro in early 2002.

**literally.** All too often used as a kind of disclaimer by writers who mean, literally, the opposite of what they are saying. The result is generally excruciating: “Hetzel was literally born with a butcher’s knife in his mouth” (*Chicago Tribune*); “After a slow start, they literally sliced up the Wildcats with their stunning last-half onslaught” (*San Francisco Chronicle*); “Our eyes were literally pinned to the curtains” (cited by Fowler).

It should not need saying, but if you don’t wish to be taken literally, don’t use *literally*. The word means actually, not figuratively. It is acceptable only when it serves to show that an expression usually used in a figurative sense is to be taken at its word, as in “He literally died laughing.”

**livid.** Originally *livid* indicated a bluish, leaden shade of the sort associated with bruising. It has since been extended to mean furious and argumentative, and
in that sense is now well established. But the word has nothing to do with redness, as is often assumed, or with brightness, as was apparently thought here: “For the sun room she chose a bold, almost livid, array of patterns and textures” (Chicago Tribune). Unless the sun room was decorated in a dullish blue, the word the writer wanted was vivid.

**Lloyd George, David** (no hyphen), for the British Prime Minister, but **Earl Lloyd-George of Dwyfor** (hyphen) for his title as a peer.

**Lloyd’s of London** (apostrophe) for the venerable insurance exchange, but **Lloyds TSB** (no apostrophe) for the British bank.

**loath, loathe.** The first is an adjective meaning reluctant, the second a verb meaning to despise.

**local residents.** “But when the Prime Minister asked that Genoans take their wet laundry indoors, he went too far for some local residents” (New York Times). Residents generally are local. Unless a contrast is needed or intended, *residents* should stand alone.

**Longchamp,** not *-champs*, for the French racecourse.

**Love’s Labour’s Lost** for the play by Shakespeare.

**Luxembourg, Luxemburg.** *Luxemburg* is an anglicized spelling of the French *Luxembourg*. One or two arbiters of usage, notably *The Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors*, prescribe *Luxemburg* for the country and the province in Belgium and *Luxembourg* for the palace and gardens in Paris. But nearly all other authorities opt (sensibly, in my view) for consistency, with *Luxembourg* throughout. However, note that the German political activist was Rosa Luxemburg.

**luxuriant, luxurious.** The words are not interchangeable, though the meanings sometimes overlap. *Luxuriant* indicates profusion (“luxuriant hair”). *Luxurious* means sumptuous and expensive (“a luxurious house”). A luxuriant carpet is a shaggy one; a luxurious carpet is an expensive one.
Mac, Mc, M’. In British usage all such words are treated as if they were spelled Mac when determining alphabetical order. Thus McGuire would precede Mason. In the United States the alphabetical order of the letters is usually followed literally, and Mason would precede McGuire.

McDonald’s (note apostrophe) for the American fast food chain. It is too ubiquitous to be misspelled as often as it is. The company is the McDonald’s Corporation.

McDonnell Douglas Corporation (now part of Boeing), but the Macdonnell Ranges in Australia.

Magdalen College, Oxford, but Magdalene College, Cambridge.

magnum opus, opus magnum. The first is an author’s principal work; the second is a great work.

major, as in a “major initiative,” “major embarrassment,” “major undertaking,” and so on, remains a severely overworked word, and thus brings a kind of tofu quality to much writing, giving it bulk but little additional flavor. Nearly always it is worth choosing a more precise or expressive term.

majority, like major, has been wearied by overuse, particularly in the expression “the vast majority of,” as in these three examples, all from authorities: “The vast majority of conditional sentences . . .” (Partridge); “In the vast majority of instances . . .” (Bernstein); “The vast majority of such mistakes . . .” (Fowler). Even when written by the most discriminating writers, “the vast majority of” seldom says more in four words than “most” says in one.

Majority should be reserved for describing the larger of two clearly divisible
things, as in “A majority of the members voted for the resolution.” But even then
a more specific description is usually better: “52 percent,” “almost two thirds,”
“more than 70 percent,” etc. When there is no sense of a clear contrast with a
minority (as in “The majority of his spare time was spent reading”), majority is
always best avoided.

**maleficence, malfeasance.** The first means a propensity to cause hurt or harm.
The second is a legal term describing wrongdoing.

**Malory, Sir Thomas,** for the fifteenth-century English author and compiler of
Arthurian legends (notably *Le Morte d’Arthur*), but **George Mallory** (two l’s)
for the Everest explorer.

**Manila** for the capital of the Philippines. The paper and envelopes are usually
spelled lowercase: *manila*. See also **Philippines**.

**manner born, to the.** Not *manor*. The line is from *Hamlet*.

**mantel, mantle.** The first is the usual spelling for the frame around a fireplace
(Burchfield insists upon it), the second for all other senses. Note also the
spellings of the associated words *mantelshelf* and *mantelpiece*.

**marginal** is unobjectionable when used to describe something falling near a
lower limit (“a marginal profit”). But it is a lame choice when all you mean is
small or slight, as was the case here: “There has been a marginal improvement in
relations between police and blacks in the community” (*Guardian*).

It is also worth noting that *margin* denotes the difference between two
quantities, not their range. Thus if the Boston Red Sox were to beat the New
York Yankees 26–0 (and one can always dream), the Red Sox would have won
by a margin of twenty-six runs. They did not have “a margin of 26–0” or “a 26–
0 margin.”

**masterful, masterly.** Most authorities continue to insist that we observe a
distinction between these two—namely, that *masterly* should apply to that which
is adroit and expert and *masterful* to that which is imperious and domineering.
So in the following quotation *masterly* would have been the better word: “Leroy
(Satchel) Paige, a masterful pitcher and baseball showman . . .” (*Washington
Post). As useful as the distinction might be, no leading dictionary insists on it, and most don’t even indicate that such a distinction exists. Moreover, it must be conceded that masterly often makes a clumsy adverb. Although it is grammatically correct to write, “He swims masterly” or even “He swims masterlily,” few writers would be content to do so. Masterly should perhaps be your first choice when you mean in the manner of a master, but to insist on it at the expense of euphony or clarity is overfussy and probably indefensible.

materialize is usually no more than a somewhat pompous synonym for occur, develop, or happen. If the urge to use it is irresistible, at least try to ensure that it is not qualifying the wrong noun, as it was here: “Hopes of an improvement in the second half of the year have not materialized” (Times). The hopes had not been realized; what had not materialized was the improvement.

Maudsley Hospital, London. Not Maude-.

Mauretania, Mauritania. The first is the spelling for the ancient African country and two famous Cunard ships. The second is the spelling of the modern African country formally known as the Islamic Republic of Mauritania.

may well be. This expression frequently signals that what follows is little more than a guess, as in this curiously cautious statement from a story in The Times of London: “On July 3, Christies will be offering a selection of Leonardos, Mantegnas, Raphaels, Parmigianinos, Rembrandts and van Dykes in what may well be the most valuable single property sale of recent times.” The London auction house, incidentally, is Christie’s, with an apostrophe. (See also VAN DYCK, VANDYKE.)

mean, median. Two points to note here. First, each of these terms has a very specific definition, but those definitions don’t necessarily translate abroad. My faithful first edition of the American Heritage Dictionary, for instance, defines mean as the middle point in a series of numbers, but most British dictionaries define mean as the sum of all numbers in a series divided by the number of numbers—in other words, as average—and that is not the same thing at all. Median on both sides of the Atlantic signifies the middle number of an array of numbers arranged in order of magnitude. The second problem, which is not unrelated to the first, is that both terms are at best vaguely understood by the general reader, and thus your most prudent course of action is to use them
extremely sparingly in anything other than technical writing.

**media** is a plural. I can see no logical reason for treating it otherwise, yet increasingly it appears as a singular, even in the most conservative and careful publications, as in this example from *The New Yorker*: “One reporter, the *Wall Street Journal*’s Nicholas Kulish, dashed off a petition . . . saying that if the media was barred from the counting room they were prepared to go to court.” *Media* is a useful umbrella term for print and broadcast interests, but they are clearly plural enterprises and so, I think, should the word be. See also **DATA**.

**melamine** for the type of plastic. It is not capitalized.

**men’s, women’s.** However eagerly department stores and the like may strive to dispense with punctuation in their signs (writing “Mens Clothing” or “Womens Department”), the practice is subliterate and to be avoided in any serious writing. Equally incorrect, if slightly less common, is placing the apostrophe after the s (e.g., “mens’ hats,” “womens’ facials”). However, note that the apostrophe is discarded in such compounds as *menswear* and *womenswear*. See also **CHILDREN’S; APOSTROPHE** (in Appendix).

**Messerschmitt,** not -schmidt, for the type of aircraft.

**metal, mettle.** For all his lexicographical genius, Samuel Johnson was not always the most consistent of spellers. It is thanks to him that we have such discordant pairs as *deign* but *disdain* and *deceit* but *receipt*, among many others. With *metal* and *mettle*, however, his inconsistency of spelling was by design. Though both come from the Greek *metallon* (meaning “a mine”) and before Johnson’s time were often spelled the same, he thought it would be useful to distinguish them. Thus *metal* is the spelling reserved for chemical elements such as gold and copper and *mettle* for contexts describing courage or spirit. A common misspelling is seen here: “Market conditions have put the hoteliers on their metal” (*Observer*).

**metaphor, simile.** Both are figures of speech in which two things are compared. A simile likens one thing to another, dissimilar one: “He ran like the wind”; “She took to racing as a duck takes to water.” A metaphor acts as if the two compared things are identical and substitutes one for the other. Comparing the beginning of time to the beginning of a day, for instance, produces the
metaphor “the dawn of time.”

Much has been written about the perils of mixed metaphors and their potential for inadvertent absurdity, as seen here: “This is a virgin field pregnant with possibilities” (cited by Fowler); “Yet the President has backed him to the hilt every time the chips were down” (cited by Bernstein). The shortcoming of such sentences is not so much that they mix metaphors as that they mix clichés. When neither of the metaphors in a sentence is hackneyed, you might just get away with it—as Shakespeare clearly did when he wrote, “Or to take arms against a sea of troubles.”

It should also be noted that you don’t need two metaphors to botch a sentence. One will do if it is sufficiently inappropriate, as it was here: “Indiana, ranked the No. 1 swimming power in the nation, walked away with the Big Ten championship tonight” (Associated Press).

**mete, meet.** The first means to allot; the second means suitable. One metes out punishment, but a fitting punishment is meet.

**meteor, meteorite, meteoroid.** Meteoroids are pieces of galactic debris floating through space. If they enter Earth’s atmosphere as shooting stars, they are meteors. If they survive the fall to Earth, they are meteorites.

**meticulous.** “The story has been published in meticulously researched weekly parts” (Observer). Several usage books, though fewer and fewer dictionaries, insist that the word does not mean merely very careful, but rather excessively so. Correctly used, it has a pejorative tone. Meticulous today is so often misused by respected writers (the example above comes from Germaine Greer) that to object is itself perhaps a somewhat meticulous act. Still, unless you mean to convey a negative quality, it is usually better to use scrupulous, careful, painstaking, or some other synonym.

**militate, mitigate.** Often confused. To militate is to operate against or, much more rarely, for something: “The news of the scandal militated against his election prospects.” To mitigate means to assuage, soften, make more endurable: “His apology mitigated the insult.” Mitigate against often appears and is always wrong.
milquetoast, not milk-, for a timid person. The name comes from an old newspaper cartoon called *The Timid Soul* featuring a character named Caspar (not -er) Milquetoast.

minimize, strictly speaking, does not mean merely to play down or soften. It means to reduce to an absolute minimum.

minuscule. Frequently misspelled, as here: “It is a market which was miniscule only five years ago” (*Guardian*). Think of *minus*, not *mini*.

minute detail. The two words are not only tautological, but also have a kind of deadening effect on any passage in which they appear, as here: “Samples of the shards were brought back to the college, where they were studied in minute detail” (*USA Today*). Why not just say: “Samples of the shards were brought back to the college for study”? One can assume that any objects being subjected to study will be examined closely.

mischievous. All too commonly misspelled: “‘All lawyers are really failed actors,’ says Ackland mischievously” (*Independent*); “He accused Harman of making misleading statements bordering on the mischievious after she claimed that drugs for patients would be cash-limited” (*Independent*). The words are *mischievous* and *mischievably*.

mishap. Generally, the word should suggest no more than a not very serious accident, which would rule out this headline: “30 die in mishap” (*Times*). It isn’t possible to say at what point exactly the word becomes inadequate to describe a misfortune, but it is unlikely to be any event involving multiple fatalities.

misogamist, misogynist. The first hates marriage, the second hates women.

misspell. If there is one word that you don’t wish to misspell in print, it is this one. Note -ss-.

modus vivendi. Although *modus vivendi* is frequently used to mean “way of life” (its literal Latin meaning), a few of the more conservative authorities maintain that it should describe only a truce between parties pending settlement of a disagreement. The best way to avoid offending the learned or perplexing the ignorant is to find a more straightforward English equivalent.
Monégasque is the preferred term in Europe for a person or thing from Monaco. American dictionaries generally suggest Monacan.

mongooses is the plural of mongoose. (The word is of Indian origin and has no relation to the English goose.)

mononucleosis is the American term for the illness known in Britain and elsewhere as glandular fever, a consideration that should be borne in mind if writing for an international audience.

more than and similar expressions, such as greater than and less than, call for some care when being positioned in sentences—at least more than was exercised here: “It is a more than 200 percent increase on the 15 million square feet planned in 1984” (Times). The construction would be less ungainly as “It is an increase of more than 200 percent on the . . .”

moribund. “Problems in the still-moribund oil tanker business mean there is little sign of recovery on the horizon” (Times). Moribund does not mean sluggish or troubled or struggling, as was intended here and frequently elsewhere. It means dying, on the point of death. To be moribund is to be critically—indeed, irreversibly—ill.

mortar, in the context of weaponry, is the launching device, not the explosive projectile. It is generally better, and sometimes necessary, to write that troops fired mortar rounds (or bombs or shells, etc.) rather than simply that they fired mortars.

most. “Not much grows at Himalayan altitudes, so . . . garlic, ginger, and chili peppers flavor most everything” (New Yorker). Unless you are striving for an air of aw-shucks folksiness, most as an adverb should be confined to signifying the topmost degree (“the most delicious cake”) or as a synonym for very (“your offer is most welcome”). As an alternative for almost or nearly, as in the example above, it is at best informal.

motiveless. “French police have intensified their search for the killer in the motiveless murder of a Parisian housewife and her three children yesterday” (Times). Motiveless is a presumptuous, and potentially dangerous, word in many contexts. Who is to say at an early stage of an investigation that a murder was
committed without motive? At the very least, make it “apparently motiveless.”

**mucous, mucus, mucosa.** The first is the adjectival form, the second the noun form. Thus *mucus* is the substance secreted by the *mucous* membranes. A more formal name for the latter is *mucosa.*

**munch.** “The most coveted invitation on a Sunday in Washington is to the Lombardi Room . . . where pols, power brokers, and media biggies munch hot dogs” (*New York Times*). Most dictionaries define *munch* as to eat with a pronounced crunching sound, so it is better not to apply it to soft, comparatively noiseless food like hot dogs.

**Muscovite** for a person from Moscow. The name comes from the ancient principality of Muscovy.

“**Music hath charms to soothe a savage breast**” is the correct quotation from the Congreve play *The Mourning Bride.* It is not “the savage breast” or “a savage beast” or any of the other variants sometimes attributed to it.

**mutual, common.** Many authorities continue to insist, with varying degrees of conviction, that *mutual* should be reserved for describing reciprocal relationships between two or more things and not loosely applied to those things held in common. Thus, if you and I like each other, we have a mutual friendship. But if you and I both like Shakespeare, we have a common admiration. The use of *mutual* in the sense of *common* has been with us since the sixteenth century and was given a notable boost in the nineteenth with the appearance of the Dickens novel *Our Mutual Friend.* Most authorities accept it when *common* might be interpreted as a denigration, but even so, in its looser sense the word is generally better avoided. It is, at all events, more often than not superfluous, as here: “They hope to arrange a mutual exchange of prisoners” (*Daily Telegraph*). An exchange of anything can hardly be other than mutual.

**Muzak** (capital M) for the piped music associated with hotel elevators and the like.

**myself.** Except when it is used for emphasis (“I’ll do it myself”) or reflexively (“I cut myself while shaving”), *myself* is almost always timorous and inapt. In the following two examples, the better word is inserted in brackets: “Give it to
John or myself [me]”; “My wife and myself [I] would just like to say . . .”
National Institutes of Health.  Note Institutes, plural.

naught, nought.  Although dictionaries increasingly treat the words as interchangeable, traditionally the first means nothing (as in “his efforts came to naught”) and the second is used to signify the figure zero. The game is noughts and crosses (known in the United States as ticktacktoe).

nauseous.  “Martinez left early, complaining that he felt nauseous” (Newsweek). Make it nauseated. Nauseous is an adjective describing something that causes nausea (“a nauseous substance”). As Bernstein neatly put it, people who are nauseated are no more nauseous than people who are poisoned are poisonous.

naval, navel.  The first pertains to a navy and its possessions or operations, the second to belly buttons and like-shaped objects. The oranges are navel.

Neandertal increasingly is the preferred spelling for the extinct species of human, though the formal scientific rendering, Homo neanderthalensis (or sometimes Homo sapiens neanderthalensis), still generally keeps the -thal spelling. Neanderthal man, as a term for the species, is both sexist and old-fashioned.

near disaster.  “His quick thinking saved an RAF jet pilot from a near disaster” (Times). Not quite. The pilot was saved from a disaster. A near disaster is what he had.

neat’s-foot oil, a substance used to treat leather, is a term that seldom appears these days but is almost always misspelled in one way or another when it does appear. Note the apostrophe and hyphen.

nebula.  The plural can be either nebulae or nebulas.
**needless to say** is a harmless enough expression, but it often draws attention to the fact that you really didn’t need to say it.

**neither** is a word that causes endless problems not only for writers but also sometimes for those who wish to guide them. The style manual for the London *Times*, for instance, states flatly that “neither takes a singular verb, e.g., ‘Neither Bert nor Fred has any idea.’” That is true enough, to be sure, for examples involving Bert and Fred or any other two singular items, but what if the items are plural? According to the *Times* guide, we would have to write, “Neither the men nor the women is dressed yet,” which would be irregular, to say the very least. And what if there is a mixture of singular and plural? Again, according to the strictures of the *Times Guide to English Style and Usage*, as it is formally known, we would have to write, “Neither the farmer nor his fifty cows was in the field,” and again we would be grammatically eccentric.

The rule, as you will gather, is slightly more complicated than is sometimes taught—but not so complicated that it should cause such persistent problems. Briefly put, in **neither . . . nor** constructions, the verb should always agree with the noun nearest it. Thus, “Neither De Niro nor his agent were available for comment” should be “was available for comment.” Since the noun nearest the verb (*agent*) is singular, so the verb should be singular. However, when the noun nearest the verb is plural, the verb should also be plural: “Neither the President nor his advisers were available for comment.”

When **neither** is used on its own, without the **nor**, the verb should always be singular: “Neither of the men was ready”; “Neither of us is hungry.”

In short, more often than not a singular verb is called for—but that singularity is by no means invariable. Try to remember that **neither** emphasizes the separateness of items. It doesn’t add them together, at least not grammatically.

Finally, note that a **neither . . . or** combination is always wrong, as here: “[The] movie mixes horror with science fiction to make something that is fun as neither one thing or the other” (*New York Times*). Make it **nor**. The following sentence makes the same error and the additional one of failing to provide a grammatical balance between the **neither** phrase and the **nor** phrase: “Borrowing which allows a country to live beyond its means serves neither the interests of the borrower or the financial community” (*Times*). Make it “serves the interests
of neither the borrower nor the financial community.” (For a fuller discussion of the balancing problem, see both . . . and.)

nemesis. “Instead, the unions directed their wrath toward another nemesis, the European Community’s Executive Commission” (Time magazine). A nemesis (from Nemesis, the Greek goddess of vengeance) is not merely a rival or traditional adversary, the sense intended here and often elsewhere, but one who exacts retributive justice or is utterly unvanquishable.

nerve-racking. Not -wracking. See rack, wrack.

new. Perhaps no word appears superfluously in text more often than new, as in each of these examples: “New chairman named at Weir Group” (Financial Times headline); “Yet another Steven Spielberg film seems poised to set new records at the box office when it opens next week” (Chicago Tribune); “The search for new breakthroughs seems to have spurred extra spending in recent years” (Newsweek). Scientists would hardly be searching for old breakthroughs, nor a film poised to set old records, nor a company naming an old chairman. Nearly always the sense of newness is implicit, and the word can be deleted without loss. This rare double from the New York Times shows at a glance just how vacuous the word often is: “New boom for Florida creates new concerns.”

niceish is the spelling for something that is rather nice.

nincompoop. Not nim-.

noisome has nothing to do with noise or noisiness. It is related to annoy and means offensive or objectionable, and is most often used to describe unpleasant smells.

none. The widely held belief that none must always be singular is a myth. Since Fowler, Bernstein, Howard, Gowers, Partridge, the Evanses, the Morrices, Follett, The Oxford English Dictionary, the American Heritage, Random House, and Webster’s New World dictionaries, and many others have already made this point, I do not suppose that the addition of my own small voice to the chorus will make a great deal of difference.

Whether you treat none as a singular or a plural, you should at least be
consistent throughout the sentence, as this writer was not: “None of her friends, she says, would describe themselves as a feminist” (Guardian). Make it either “would describe themselves as feminists” or “would describe herself as a feminist.”

A more notable inconsistency, if only because it comes from a respected authority, is seen here: “The total vocabulary of English is immense and runs to about half a million items. None of us as individuals, of course, knows more than a fairly limited number of these, and uses even less” (Professor Randolph Quirk, The Use of English). “None of us . . . uses even less”? The sentence appears to be telling us that nobody uses fewer words than he knows, which is, unfortunately, the opposite of what the author intended. It would be better if we made it “and we use even less,” and better still if we made it “and we use even fewer.”

**non sequitur** is the Latin for “it does not follow” and means the combination of two or more statements that are jarringly unrelated, as in “He was born in Liverpool and his shoes were brown.” Non sequiturs are most often encountered in newspapers, where constructions such as the following are common: “Slim, of medium height, and with sharp features, Mr. Smith’s technical skills are combined with strong leadership qualities” (New York Times). What, we might ask, do Mr. Smith’s height and features have to do with his leadership qualities? The answer, of course, is not a thing. When non sequiturs are not intrusive and annoying, they are often just absurd, as here: “Dyson’s catch of Clarke was unbelievable, the best catch I’ve seen. And the one before it was just as good” (Sydney Daily Telegraph, cited in Punch).

**normalcy** is widely and perhaps even a little reflexively condemned in Britain as an inelegant Americanism. Its coinage is often attributed to President Warren G. Harding, who did indeed promise voters “a return to normalcy” as part of one of his campaign pledges, but in fact the word predates Harding by several centuries and arose in Britain. Although most dictionaries accept it as standard, it is still derided as a casualism by many authorities, who suggest normality instead.

**not.** Sometimes when writers invert the normal word order of a sentence to place greater emphasis on not, they present the reader with a false parenthesis. It is a fault to which even usage guides are sometimes prey, as here: “Could not
that lingua franca be, not Esperanto, Volupük, or even English, but humor?” (John Simon, *Paradigms Lost*). As punctuated, the phrase “not Esperanto, Volupük, or even English” is parenthetical. But if we deleted it (as we should be able to do with all parenthetical expressions), the sentence would read, “Could not that lingua franca be but humor?” The first comma is wrong and should be deleted. Except when the sentiment is pithy (“Death be not proud”), such sentences are usually clumsy, which may account for the urge to embellish them with unnecessary punctuation.

**not all.** “For some time now tales have been circulating that all was not well in the Goldsmith empire” (*Times*). What the writer really meant, of course, was that not all was well in the empire, not that everything was unwell. The authorities are curiously, and almost unanimously, tolerant on this point. The Evanses are actually rather vehement about it, stating, “Distinctions such as this, between *all is not* and *not all is*, appeal to a fictitious logic and seem to have been invented for the purposes of proving other people wrong. They are not good for much else.”

I’m afraid the authorities and I are at odds here—or, as the Evanses might put it, all of us don’t agree. It seems to me difficult to justify a sentence that so blatantly contradicts what it is meant to say, especially when the solution is as simple a matter as moving the *not* back two places. Setting aside any considerations of grammatical tidiness and rectitude, if we accept the Evanses’ position, how do we make ourselves clear when we really do mean that all isn’t well? A few expressions unquestionably have the weight of idiom behind them (“All is not lost,” “All that glisters is not gold”), but on the whole, I think the construction is better avoided in careful writing. Certainly I wouldn’t want to have to defend the New York clothing store that advertised “All items not on sale” (cited by William Safire, *New York Times*).

*Notes from Underground* is the novel by Dostoevsky. Not the *Underground*.

**not so much** is often followed by *but* when the word should be *as*, as here: “He was not so much a comic actor, consciously presenting an amusing part, but a real comedian” (J. B. Priestley, cited by Partridge). Make it “as a real comedian.”

*Nullarbor Plain*, Western Australia. Often misspelled *Nullabor*. 
Errors of number—the failure to maintain agreement between the subject and verb in a sentence—are probably the most common grammatical fault in English and often the least excusable. In a language where so much is so complicated, the rule is gratifyingly simple: a singular subject takes a singular verb and a plural subject takes a plural verb. As Bernstein says, anyone who can distinguish between one and more than one shouldn’t find that too sophisticated a challenge. Yet errors abound—even, as we shall see, among those who should know better. Many of the causes of errors are treated separately throughout the book, but five in particular are worth noting here.

1. Errors involving “and.” When two nouns or pronouns joined by and form a compound subject, a plural verb is required. “Impatience and anger in political and editorial circles has been sharply mounting” (Los Angeles Times). Make it have. “She told the meeting that the disorder and despair of the Conservative Party was not self-evident” (Times). Make it were.

   The error is especially common when the normal subject-verb order is reversed, as here: “Why, you may ask, is correct speech and writing important, as long as the writing is clear?” (Simon, Paradigms Lost). Speech and writing are important.

   Simon might argue—indeed, he would have to—that speech and writing are so closely related that they form a single idea. When that is the case, a singular verb is unobjectionable. But such exceptions are better kept for things that are routinely combined—fish and chips, ham and eggs, law and order, the long and the short of it, etc.—and even then a plural verb would not be wrong.

2. Errors involving “or.” Whereas and draws diverse elements together, or keeps them separate. When all the elements are singular, the verb should be singular too. Thus this sentence is wrong: “A nod, wink, or even a discreet tug of the ear aren’t [make it isn’t] going to be the only sign language at the auction” (Observer). When all the elements are plural, the verb should be plural. When there is a mixture of singulars and plurals, the rule is to make the verb agree with the noun or pronoun nearest it. Consider: “No photographs or television footage have been transmitted from the fleet for almost a week” (New York Times). Because the nearest noun, footage, is singular, the verb should be has. Had the two nouns been reversed, have would have been correct.
The need to maintain agreement can sometimes lead to awkward constructions, particularly with pronouns. “Is he or we wrong?” is grammatically perfect but perfectly awful. The solution would be to recast the sentence: “Is he wrong or are we?”

A final point to note is that or influences not only the verb but also subsequent nouns and pronouns. In the following sentence the correct forms are given in brackets: “While Paris, Mexico City, Hong Kong, or Munich have [has] shown how their [its] underground systems [system] can become part of the pride of their [its] city . . .” (Observer). A better alternative with that sentence, however, would be to change the or to and and leave the rest of it as it is.

3. Errors caused by failure to keep track of antecedents. Few people, it sometimes seems, have shorter attention spans than the average writer. All too often he or she will confidently set out with a plural or singular noun, become distracted by three or four intervening words, and finish with a verb of the opposite number. Such was the case in each of the following (the correct forms are given in brackets): “Bank mortgages, which now account for most expensive property, is [are] not included in the figures” (Times); “The pressure of living and working on board 24 hours a day have [has] led to some strained relationships” (Observer); “The incident demonstrates the reluctance with which some requests for interviews with ministers and senior officials is [are] met” (Times).

Occasionally the writer does not even have the excuse of intervening matter: “Meet Allan and Sondra Gotlieb, whose official titles may cause glazed looks but whose frankness have made them among the most popular, and unusual, diplomats in Washington” (New York Times). Frankness have?

And sometimes the intervening matter is so clearly unconnected with the main clause that the error is startling—all the more so when it is committed by as careful a user as Philip Howard: “Populist (and its generic class of politics, populism) have recently been adopted as vogue words in British politics” (from New Words for Old). Make it “has recently been adopted as a vogue word.” (For a discussion, see parentheses in the Appendix.)

4. Errors involving personal pronouns. This is a common type and one that points up the inadequacies both of English and of those who use it. Consider: “If
someone is learning a language for their job . . .” (Financial Times). The problem is that the singular someone and singular is are being attached to the plural their. Grammatically it is equivalent to saying, “No one were there” or “They is studying French.”

The convention is to make the second pronoun his: “If someone is learning a language for his job . . .” The obvious shortcoming is that this slights women. To avoid offending either them or grammar, you could make it “his or her job,” which is often cumbersome, or you could recast the sentence with a plural subject: “People who are learning a language for their job . . .” I recommend recasting.

Too strict an application of the rule can result in incongruities—a point that evidently occurred to Philip Howard when he wrote the following sentence in Words Fail Me: “Nobody pretends any more (if they ever did) that economics is an exact science.” “If they ever did” is strictly incorrect, but to change it to “if he ever did” would unbalance the sense of the sentence. One way of preserving the grammar would be to make the subject plural: “Few people pretend any more . . .” Another would be to replace they with a singular pronoun: “Nobody pretends any more (if anyone ever did) that economics is an exact science.” These solutions are not perhaps entirely satisfactory—but then neither, I think, is a grammatical error.

Whichever tack you take, you should at least be consistent throughout the sentence. Here is one in which the writer went to some lengths to get the pronouns right before abruptly self-destructing just short of home: “Anyone who does confess to being a Sedaka fan does so with the guarded reluctance of one edging out of the closet, fearing he or she will be made immediate targets of fun” (Sunday Times). It should be “an immediate target of fun.”

5. Errors involving the word “number.” There is frequent confusion over whether to use a plural or singular verb with the noun number. Both of the following examples come from the same issue of The Times. Both are wrong. “Mr. Isaacs said a substantial number of households was inhabited today not by the conventional family group, but by single tenants”; “A small, but increasing number of individuals is apparently buying secondhand British Rail coaches.” There is an easy way out of the confusion. Always make it “The number was . . .” but “A number were . . .” The same rule applies to total.
numbers in text. “For more than a 1,000 years, the Venetians have laboured to preserve the delicate balance of their watery domain” (Independent); “Fugly has become the most impounded mutt in Australia with over a 100 convictions” (Independent). When numbers to a power of ten, such as these, are written out, they mean “one hundred,” “one thousand,” and so on. Putting an indefinite article in front of them is to say in effect “a one thousand years” or “a one hundred convictions.” Make it “a thousand years” or “1,000 years,” or “a hundred convictions” or “100 convictions,” but don’t combine the two.

numskull, not numbskull, is the preferred spelling.

Nuremberg (German Nürnberg) for the Bavarian city. Not -burg.
O, oh. O is confined almost exclusively to religious and poetic contexts. By convention it is always capitalized and never followed by punctuation. Thus if rendering a prayer you would write: “O Lord, who has drawn over weary day the restful veil of night. . . .” Oh is used in all other senses and is normally set off with a comma or commas: “We hunted for him for, oh, seven hours”; “Oh, I think it was a green car.” If a sentence employs a reverential word but is not actually reverential in intent, use oh, as in “Oh, god, I think she’s spotted me” or “Oh, lord, I don’t remember his name.”

oblivious. Fowler, Partridge, and the OED, among others, long maintained that oblivious can mean only forgetful. You cannot properly be oblivious of something that you were not in the first place aware of. But in its broader sense of merely being unaware or impervious, oblivious is now accepted universally.

obsolete, obsolescent. Things that are no longer used or needed are obsolete. Things that are becoming obsolete are obsolescent.

obviate does not mean to reduce or make more acceptable, it means to make unnecessary.

occur, take place. Take place is better reserved for scheduled events. When what is being described is accidental, occur is the better word, as it would have been here: “The accident took place in driving rain” (Guardian).

off of is redundant. Write “Get off the table,” not “Get off of the table.”

Oireachtas for the Irish legislature, consisting of the President and the two assemblies, the Dáil Éireann and Seanad. It is pronounced “ur'-AKH-tus.”

Old Peculier, not Peculiar, for the English beer.
Olympic-sized swimming pool. “. . . and in fitting movie star fashion, the grounds include an Olympic-sized swimming pool” (Mail on Sunday). An official Olympics swimming pool is fifty meters long. Virtually no private person, even in Hollywood, owns a pool that large. The description is almost always a gross exaggeration.

Omar Khayyám is the correct spelling of the Persian poet and mathematician. Note -yy-.

on, upon. Although some journalists think there is, or ought to be, a distinction between these two, there isn’t. The choice is sometimes dictated by idiom (“on no account,” “upon my soul”), but in all other instances it is a matter of preference.

one. “The makers claim that one in 14 people in the world are following the exploits of this new hero” (Sunday Times). In such constructions one should be singular. In effect the sentence is saying: “Out of every 14 people in the world, one is following the exploits of this new hero.” A slightly trickier case appears here: “An estimated one in three householders who are entitled to rebates are not claiming.” (Times). The first are is correct, but the second is wrong. Again, it may help to invert the sentence: “Of those householders who are entitled to rate rebates, one in every three is not claiming.”

one of the, one of those. The problem here is similar to that discussed in the previous entry, but with the difference that here one does not govern the verb. Consider: “Nott is actually one of those rare politicians who really doesn’t mind what he says” (Observer). The operative word here is not one but those, as can be seen by inverting the sentence: “Of those politicians who do not mind what they say, Nott is one.”

The mistake is a common one. Even Fowler made it in his Dictionary of Modern English Usage (second edition) when he wrote, “Prestige is one of the words that has had an experience opposite to that described in ‘Worsened Words.’ ” It should be have had. Sixty pages earlier he called the error “a frequent blunder.”

one or more is plural. “Inside each folder is one or more sheets of information” (cited by Bernstein) should be “are one or more.”
**only.** In general, *only* ought to be attached to the word or phrase it is modifying and not set adrift, as here: “The A Class bus only ran on Sundays” (*Observer*). Taken literally, the sentence suggests that on other days of the week the bus did something else—perhaps flew? The writer would better have said that the bus “ran only on Sundays” or “on Sundays only.”

Often, to be sure, clarity and idiom are better served by bringing *only* to a more forward position (“This will only take a minute”; “The victory can only be called a miracle”). And increasingly, it must be said, authorities are inclined toward leniency with regard to where *only* is permitted. Certainly it is always better to avoid an air of fussiness. But when, as in the example above, a simple repositioning puts the word in the right place without creating a distraction, there is no reason not to do it.

**on to, onto.** Until the twentieth century, *onto* as one word was almost unknown in both Britain and America, and its standing remains somewhat dubious in Britain. Today in the United States (and increasingly in Britain), *onto* is used where the two elements function as a compound preposition (“He jumped onto the horse”) and *on to* is used where *on* is an adverb (“We moved on to the next subject”).

**openness.** Note -nn-.

**ophthalmologist, oculist, optometrist, optician.** *Ophthalmologist* is often misspelled and even more frequently mispronounced. Note that it begins *oph-* and not *opth-* and that the first syllable is pronounced “off,” not “op.” Thus it is similar in pronunciation and spelling to *diphtheria, diphthong, and naphtha*, all of which are also frequently misspelled and misspoken.

*Ophthalmologist* and *oculist* both describe doctors who specialize in conditions of the eye. An *optometrist* is one who is trained to test eyes but is not a doctor. An *optician* is one who makes or sells corrective lenses.

**opt, choose.** Safire suggests that *opt* would be a more expressive word if we used it only to describe impulsive choices, and he is right. But it must be said that none of the leading dictionaries note or encourage such a distinction.

**optimistic, pessimistic.** Strictly speaking, both words should be used to
describe a general outlook rather than a specific view, particularly with regard to
the inconsequential. “He was optimistic that he would find the missing book”
would be better as “was hopeful” or “was confident.”

**optimum** does not mean greatest or fastest or biggest, as is sometimes thought.
It describes the point at which conflicting considerations are reconciled. The
optimum flying speed of an aircraft is the speed at which all the many variables
that must be taken into account in flying—safety, comfort, fuel consumption,
and so on—are most nearly in harmony.

**or** has the grammatical effect of emphasizing the separateness of items rather
than adding them together. If a grammarian offers you an apple, a pear, or a
banana, he means that you may have one of them, not all three. Thus when **or**
links two or more singular items in a sentence, the verb must always be singular.
“It was not clear whether the President or Vice President were within hearing
range at the time” (*Chicago Tribune*) should be “was within hearing range.” If
that sounds stilted, you can flag the singularity by inserting **either** ahead of the
phrase (“It was not clear whether either the President or the Vice President was
within hearing range”), or, more simply still, you can change **or** to **and**, thus
justifying the plural verb. For a full discussion, see NUMBER, 2.

**oral, verbal.** “The 1960 understanding . . . was a verbal understanding that was
never written down” (*New York Times*). Because **oral** can apply only to the
spoken word, it would have been a better choice here. **Verbal**, which can
describe both spoken and written words, is more usefully employed to
distinguish between words and gestures or between words and substance. In the
example above, however, neither word is necessary. It would be enough to say,
“The 1960 understanding was never written down.”

**originally** is often needlessly inserted into sentences where it conveys no
additional information, as here: “The plans were originally drawn up as long ago
as 1972” (*Observer*).

**Orkney.** The collection of Scottish islands is properly labeled **Orkney** or **the
Orkney Islands**, but not **the Orkneys**. A native or resident is an **Orcadian**.

“**Ours is not to reason why, ours is but to do or die**” is often heard but is
wrong. The lines from Tennyson’s “Charge of the Light Brigade” are “Their’s
not to reason why, Their’s but to do and die.” Note that the closing words “do and die” give the lines an entirely different sense from “do or die.” Finally, it should be noted that Tennyson’s punctuation of theirs is irregular (see possessives).

**over.** The notion that over is incorrect for more than (as in “over three hundred people were present at the rally”) is a widely held superstition. The stricture has been traced to Ambrose Bierce’s *Write It Right* (1909), a usage book teeming with quirky recommendations, many of which you will find repeated nowhere. There is no harm in preferring more than, but also no basis for insisting on it.

**overly.** “I didn’t wish to appear overly earnest, but I couldn’t help but wonder what was in the box” (*Philadelphia Inquirer*). Making over into overly is a little like turning soon into soonly. Adding -ly does nothing for over that it could not already do.

**overweening.** Arrogant or presumptuous expectations are overweening ones. There is no word overweaning.

“Ozymandias” for the sonnet by Percy Bysshe Shelley (1818). Not Oxy-.
paean, paeon, peon. A *paean* (alternative spelling *pean*) is a hymn or song of praise. A *paeon* is a metrical foot in classical poetry. A *peon* is a servant or peasant.

pail, pale. The first is a small bucket; the second means lacking color.

palate, palette, pallet. *Palate* has to do with the mouth and taste. *Palette* is the board used by artists. *Pallet* is a mattress, a machine part, or a wooden platform on which freight is placed.

pall-mall, pell-mell. The first was a game popular in the eighteenth century. A favored site for playing it later became the London street Pall Mall. For the act of moving crazily or in haste, the word is *pell-mell*. All versions of the word, including Pall Mall, are pronounced “pell mell.”

parlay, parley. The first is to use one gain to make another (“He parlayed his winnings into a small fortune”). The second is a conference (noun) or to discuss (verb).

panacea is a universal remedy, a cure for all woes, and is not properly applied to a single shortcoming, as it was here: “One of the best panaceas for the styling similarity of many modern cars seems to be the removal of the roof” (*Observer*).

partly, partially. Although they are often interchangeable, their meanings are slightly different. *Partially* means incompletely and *partly* means in part. “The house was made partially of brick and partially of stone” would be better as “partly of brick and partly of stone.”

past. Often a space-waster, as in this example: “Davis said the dry conditions had been a recurrent problem for the past thirty years” (*Denver Post*). In this
sentence, and in countless others like it, “the past” could be deleted without any loss of sense. Equally tautological and to be avoided are such expressions as past records, past history, past experience, past achievements, and past precedents.

**pastiche.** “This provided the occasion for a successful pastiche of that great Fonda film, *Twelve Angry Men*” (*Times*). A pastiche is a work inspired by a variety of sources. The word the writer was groping for here was *parody*.

**peaceable, peaceful.** *Peaceful* means tranquil and serene. *Peaceable* is a disposition toward the state of peacefulness.

**pease pudding** for the dish. (*Pease* was originally both the plural and singular form of the word *pea*.)

**pedal, peddle.** The first applies to devices or actions involving foot power—the pedal on a piano, to pedal a bicycle. The second is a verb only, meaning to sell goods in an informal or itinerant manner.

**pedant, pedagogue.** The two are synonyms. They describe someone who makes an ostentatious show of his or her learning or is dogmatically fussy about rules. Some dictionaries still give *pedagogue* as a synonym for teacher or educator, but its pejorative sense has effectively driven out the neutral one.

**penn’orth** for “a penny’s worth.”

**per.** Many usage guides suggest, and a few insist, that Latinisms like *per* should be avoided when English phrases are available—that it is better to write “ten tons a year” than “ten tons per year.” That is certainly reasonable enough in general, but I would suggest that when avoiding the Latin results in clumsy constructions such as “output a man a year,” you shouldn’t hesitate to use *per*.

**percent, percentage point.** There is an important distinction between the two terms that is not always observed, even on the financial pages. Consider the following example from the business section of *The Times* of London. Headline: “U.S. tax reform to cut top rate by 25%.” Story: “U.S. Senate and House officials have begun work on [a] tax reform bill which would cut the top rate for individuals from 50 percent to an estimated 25 percent.” In short, the tax rate is to fall by half and not, as the headline suggests, by a quarter.
Put another way, if interest rates are 10 percent and they rise to 11 percent, they have risen by one percentage point but by 10 percent in value. In everyday contexts this difference in meaning may often be overlooked. Even in financial circles people routinely talk about a 2 percent rise in mortgage rates when strictly they mean a two-point rise. But in contexts in which the percentage rise is large and ambiguity is likely, the distinction can be critical.

Finally, note that in Britain and most other English-speaking countries the normal spelling is _per cent_ (though _percentage_ remains one word).

**percentage, proportion.** The words are used inexacty when the relationship between two numbers isn’t specified. “This drug has proved of much value in a percentage of cases” (cited by Gowers) tells us next to nothing. It could mean 2 percent or 28 percent or 92 percent. Similarly, “a ship of large proportions” would be better replaced by “a ship of large dimensions” or simply “a large ship.”

**perceptible.** Not -able.

**perchance, perforce.** The first means possibly. The second means without choice.

**period of time.** A curiously irresistible expression for many writers, as here: “Roth maintained that the problem was not new at all, but rather had been going on for a considerable period of time” (Washington Post). Shortening it to “for a considerable period” or “a long time” would be an improvement. Specifying a more precise span—“for months,” “for years,” “for more than six weeks,” or whatever is appropriate—would be better still.

**perpetrate, perpetuate.** Occasionally confused. To perpetrate is to commit or perform. To perpetuate is to prolong or, literally, to make perpetual. The Boston Strangler perpetrated a series of murders. Those who write about him perpetuate his notoriety.

**persevere, perseverance.** Not -ser-.

**personal, personally.** When it is necessary to emphasize that a person is acting on his own rather than on behalf of a group or that he is addressing people
individually rather than collectively, *personal* and *personally* are unexceptionable. But usually the context makes that clear and the word is used without purpose, as it was here: “Dr. Leonard has decided to visit personally the Oklahoma parish which is the center of the dispute” (*Daily Telegraph*). If he visits, Dr. Leonard can hardly do otherwise than personally. Many other common terms—*personal friend*, *personal opinion*, *personal favorite*—are nearly always equally redundant.

**perspicacity, perspicuity.** *Perspicacity* means shrewdness and applies to people (“a perspicacious judge of character”). *Perspecuity* means easily understood and applies to things (“a perspicuous explanation”). In both cases, a simpler synonym—*shrewd* for the first, *clear* for the second, for example—is often advisable.

**peruse.** “Those of us who have been idly perusing the latest flock of holiday brochures . . .” (*Guardian*). It is a losing battle, no doubt, but I must point out that *peruse* does not mean to look over casually. It means to read or examine carefully.

**Peterhouse.** the Cambridge college, is never called *Peterhouse College*.

**Philippines.** Note one *l*, two *p’s*. A person from the Philippines is a Filipino if male, a Filipina if female. Filipino is also the name of the national language.

**phrasal verbs** is a somewhat ungainly term for what is unquestionably one of the more versatile features of English—namely, the ability to extend the meaning of verbs by attaching a particle to them. Thus in English we can *break up, break off, break down, break in, break out, and break into, or take to, take off, take in, take over, take up, take down, and take away*, among many others. Each expression conveys a shade of meaning that would not be possible without the particle. But this capacity to grace a verb with a tail sometimes leads writers to add a word where none is needed. Thus we get *head up, lose out, cut back, trigger off, pay off*, and countless others. Sometimes such combinations, though strictly unnecessary, gain the force of idiom (*stand up, sit down, beat up*), but often they are merely a sign of careless writing. In the following examples, the italicized words do nothing but consume space: “Now the bureau proposes to sell *off* 280 acres” (*Time* magazine); “The time will be cut *down* to two hours within two years” (*Daily Telegraph*); “A light snowfall did little to slow down
the British advance” *(Sunday Times).*

**pizzeria**, not *pizza-*, for the place where pizzas are made.

**plan ahead.** “[The] keys to success are to plan ahead, to choose manageable recipes, and to cook in batches” *(New York Times).* Always tautological. Would you plan behind?

**plea, plead.** “Police in plea for more funds” *(Evening Standard* headline). The story beneath the headline described a routine request for more money. Unless there is a genuine sense of urgency and at least a hint of submissive entreaty, *plea* almost always overstates the case. It is without argument a usefully compact headline word, but so are the more neutral words *seek* and *ask*. See also GRIEF, GRIEVE.

**plenitude** for the sense of abundance. Not *plenti-*.  

**plethora** is not merely a lot, it is an excessive amount, a superabundance. For a word that is often similarly misused, see *spate*.

**plus.** “The end of the holiday season plus the fact that London banks remained closed were cited as factors contributing to the quiet trading day” *(Associated Press).* *Plus* is a preposition, not a conjunction, and therefore does not influence the number of the verb. Two and two are four, but two plus two is four. The example above should say “was cited as a factor,” or *plus* should be changed to *and*.

**populace, populous.** The first describes a general population. The second means heavily populated.

**pore, pour.** Occasionally *pour* appears where *pore* is intended. As a verb, *pore* means to examine carefully (“She pored over the documents”) or, more rarely, to meditate. *Pour* indicates a flow, either literally (“He poured the water down the drain”) or figuratively (“The rioters poured through the streets”).

**position.** Often a pointer to verbosity. “They now find themselves in a position where they have to make a choice” *(Daily Telegraph)* would be immeasurably better as “They now have to make a choice.”
possessives. Problems with possessives are discussed in some detail in the Appendix under APOSTROPHE, but three especially common faults are worth mentioning here.

1. Failure to put an apostrophe in the right place. This is particularly frequent with words like men’s, women’s, and children’s, which all too often appear as mens’, womens’, and children’s.

2. Failure to put in an apostrophe at all. This practice—spelling the words mens, womens, and childrens and so on—is particularly rife among retailers. It is painful enough to behold there, inexcusable elsewhere.

3. Putting an apostrophe where none is needed. Possessive pronouns—his, hers, ours, theirs, and so on—do not take an apostrophe. But sometimes one is wrongly inserted, as here: “I don’t think much of your’s” (Independent headline).

See also “OURS IS NOT TO REASON WHY . . .”

possible is wrongly followed by may in constructions such as the following: “It is possible that she may decide to go after all” (Daily Telegraph). Make it either “It is possible that she will decide to go after all” or “She may decide to go after all.” Together the two words are redundant and unnecessary.

postmeridian, post meridiem. The first means related to or happening in the afternoon. The second, also pertaining to the period after noon, is the Latin term better known to most of us as the abbreviation P.M. Note the different terminal spellings.

practical, practicable. Anything that can be done and is worth doing is practical. Anything that can be done, whether or not it is worth doing, is practicable.

practice, practise. “U.S. usage . . . spells both noun and verb practise, as with license” (Fieldhouse, Everyman’s Good English Guide). That is a common misconception outside North America. In the United States, practice is in fact always spelled with a c: practice, practiced, practicing. In British usage, the noun is spelled practice (“Practice makes perfect”) and the verb practise (“You
must practise your piano lessons”). See also LICENCE, LICENSE.

**precautionary measure** is a common phrase but can nearly always be shortened simply to precaution.

**precipitant, precipitate, precipitous.** All three come from the same root, the Latin praecipitare (“to throw headlong”). Precipitous means very steep: cliff faces are precipitous. Precipitant and precipitate both indicate a headlong rush and are almost indistinguishable in meaning, but precipitant tends to emphasize the abruptness of the rush and precipitate the rashness of it. The most common error is to use precipitous to describe actions (“his precipitous departure from the Cabinet”). Precipitous can describe only physical characteristics.

**precondition, preplanning, prerecorded, etc.** Almost always redundant. “A lot of headaches can be avoided with a little careful preplanning” (Chicago Tribune). All planning must be done in advance. Pre- adds nothing to its meaning and should be deleted, as it should have been in these examples: “There are, however, three preconditions to be met before negotiations can begin” (Guardian); “The company’s music performance reflected both the volatility and opportunities for growth in the worldwide market for prerecorded music” (advertisement in The Economist).

**premier, premiere.** The first, chiefly British, is a government official of top rank, especially a Prime Minister. The second is a debut.

**premises** is always plural when referring to property. There is no such thing as a business premise.

**prepositions.** Anyone who believes that it is wrong to end a sentence with a preposition—and there are still some who do—is about a century out of touch. The “rule” was enshrined by one Robert Lowth, an eighteenth-century Anglican Bishop of London and gentleman grammarian. In his wildly idiosyncratic but curiously influential Short Introduction to English Grammar, Lowth urged his readers not to end sentences with prepositions if they could decently avoid it. Too many people took him much too literally, and for a century and a half the notion held sway. Today, happily, it is universally dismissed as a pointless affectation. Indeed, in many sentences the preposition could scarcely come anywhere but at the end: “This bed hasn’t been slept in”; “What is the world
coming to?”; “I don’t know what you are talking about.”

**prescribe, proscribe.**  *Prescribe* means to set down as a rule or guide. *Proscribe* means to denounce or prohibit. If you get bronchitis, your doctor may prescribe antibiotics and proscribe smoking.

**present, presently.**  Like *current* and *currently*, these two often appear needlessly in sentences, as here: “A new factory, which is presently under construction in Manchester, will add to capacity” (*Times*). The sentence says as much without *presently* as with it.

**pressurize.**  “Esso accused him of trying to pressurize the Prime Minister into bailing out his petrochemical plant” (*Times*). Gases, liquids, and foods can be pressurized (i.e., compacted into containers under pressure). People are *pressed* or *pressured*.

**presumptive, presumptuous.**  The first is sometimes used when the second is intended. *Presumptuous* means impudent and inclined to take liberties, or to act in a manner that is excessively bold and forthright. *Presumptive* means giving grounds to presume and is primarily a technical term. The wrong use is seen here: “She considered the question with the equanimity of someone who has long been immune to presumptive prying” (*Sunday Telegraph*).

**pretension** but **pretentious.**

**prevaricate, procrastinate.**  Occasionally confused. *Prevaricate* means to speak or act evasively, to stray from the truth. *Procrastinate* means to put off doing.

**prevent** often appears incorrectly in sentences such as this: “They tried to prevent him leaving.” It should be either “They tried to prevent his leaving” or “They tried to prevent him from leaving.” See **gerunds**, 2.

**preventive, preventative.**  “One way to ease their difficulties, they decided, was to practice preventative medicine” (*Economist*). *Preventative* is not incorrect, but *preventive* is shorter.

**principal, principle.**  *Principle* means fundamental and is usually applied to fundamental beliefs or truths (“It’s not the money, it’s the principle”) or to
fundamental understandings ("They have signed an agreement in principle"). It is always a noun. *Principal* can be a noun meaning chief or of first importance ("He is the school’s principal") or an adjective with the same meaning ("The principal reason for my going . . .").

**pristine** does not simply mean sparkling or tidy, but pure and unchanged from an original condition. You might speak of a pristine brook or a Raphael painting in pristine condition, but to describe a tidied closet or freshly laundered shirt as pristine is nearly always to use the word too loosely.

**Procter & Gamble** for the household products company. Often misspelled *Proctor*.

**prodigal** does not mean wandering or given to running away, a sense sometimes wrongly inferred from the biblical story of the Prodigal Son. It means recklessly wasteful or extravagant.

**prone, prostrate, recumbent, supine.** *Supine* means lying face upward (it may help to remember that a supine person is on her spine). *Prone* and *prostrate* are regarded by most dictionaries and usage authorities, but by no means all, as meaning lying face downward. (A few say that they can also apply to a person or thing lying face up.) *Prostrate* should, in any case, suggest throwing oneself down, either in submission or for protection; someone who is merely asleep should not be called prostrate. *Recumbent* means lying flat in any position, but like *repose*, it should indicate a position of ease and comfort. For the other sense of *prone*, see LIABLE, LIKELY, APT, PRONE.

**proper nouns.** Many writers stumble when confronted with finding a plural form for a proper noun, as in the two following examples, both from *The Times* of London and both wrong: “The Cox’s were said by neighbors to be . . . happily married”; “This is the first of a new series about the Rush’s.” The rule for making plurals of proper nouns is precisely the same as for any other nouns. If you have no trouble turning “one fox” into “two foxes” or “one church” into “two churches,” you should have no trouble making “the Rush family” into “the Rushes” and “the Cox couple” into “the Coxes.” In short, for names ending in s, sh, ch, or x, add *es*: *Lewises, Lennoxes, Clemenses*. For all others, simply add *s*: *Smiths, Browns, Greens, the two Koreas*. The rule is invariable for Anglo-Saxon names. For others, there are a few exceptions, among them *Rockies, Ptolemies,*
Alleghenies, Mercuries, and (in some publications) Germanies. At all events, the addition of an apostrophe to make any noun plural is always wrong.

**prophecy, prophesy.** The first is the noun, the second the verb. Thus: “I prophesy war; that is my prophecy.”

**protagonist.** Literally the word means “first actor” (from the Greek protos and agonistes), and by extension it may be applied to the person who most drives the action in any affair. However, there cannot properly be more than one protagonist per affair, as was evidently thought here: “During the anomalous decade of the 1930s the three protagonists of this book each played out important . . . roles” (*New York Times*). The word is not the opposite of antagonist, of which there can be any number. Nor does it necessarily have anything to do with heroic or admirable behavior or bear any relationship to the Latin pro-, meaning “for” or “on behalf of.” A protagonist may champion a cause, and in practice often does, but that isn’t implicit in the word.

**prototype** is the word for an original that serves as a model for later products of its type. Thus first prototype, experimental prototype, model prototype, and most other qualifying descriptions are redundant.

**proved, proven.** In general, proved is the preferred past-tense form (“the accused was proved innocent”) and proven the preferred form for adjectival uses (“a proven formula”).

**proverbial.** “Cooper responded with the proverbial Bronx cheer” (*USA Today*). Unless there is some connection to an actual proverb, the word is wrongly used and better avoided.

**provided, providing.** Most authorities consider the first preferable to the second in constructions such as “He agreed to come, provided he could get the day off work,” but either would be correct. If is often better still.

**purposely, purposefully.** The first means intentionally. The second means with an objective in mind. “She purposely nudged me” means it was no accident. “She purposefully nudged me” means she did it to make a point or draw my attention to something.
put an end to is an expression to which one might usefully do just that. Make it **stop** or **finish**.

**Pyrrhic victory** is not, as is sometimes thought, a hollow triumph. It is one won at huge cost to the victor.
Qantas. Although the full name is no longer used, for historical purposes it is worth noting that Qantas is short for Queensland and Northern Territory Aerial Service. Not Air and not Services.

quadriplegia, not quadra-, for paralysis of all four limbs.

quadruped, not quadra-, quadri-, for a four-legged animal. The adjectival form is quadrupedal.

quandary. Not quandry or quandery.

quantum leap has become a cliché and is best avoided. A separate objection is that its general sense of a revolutionary step forward is at variance with its actual scientific sense of a movement or advance that is discrete and measurable but not necessarily, or even usually, dramatic.

Queen’s College, Oxford, but Queens’ College, Cambridge.

query, inquiry, enquiry. A query is a single question. An inquiry or enquiry may be a single question or an extensive investigation. Either spelling is correct, but inquiry is preferred by most dictionaries in both Britain and America.

question, leading. A leading question is not a challenging or hostile one, as is sometimes thought, but the opposite. It is a question designed to encourage the person being questioned to make the desired response. A lawyer who says to a witness, “So you didn’t see the murder, did you?” has asked a leading question.

question mark has become an overworked embellishment of the expression “a question hanging over,” which is itself wearily overused. Consider: “The case . . . has raised a question mark over the competence of British security”
(Times). Would you say of a happy event that it had raised an exclamation mark over the proceedings or that negotiations that had been suspended had a comma hanging over them?

**quinquennial** can mean either to last for five years or to occur once every five years. Because of the inherent ambiguity, the word is almost always better replaced with a more specific phrase.

**quoting in fragments** is often a needless distraction, as here: “Lowe also had been sick, but said he was now feeling ‘better’ ” (Boston Globe). You should have some justification for quoting matter, especially in fragments. When the word or words being quoted are unusual or unexpected or particularly descriptive (“It was, he said, a ‘lousy’ performance”) or are otherwise notable, the use of quotation marks is always unobjectionable and often advisable. But to set off a workaday word like *better* in the example above is unnecessary. Here is a sentence in which the second set of quotation marks is as unobjectionable as the first is fatuous: “Dietz agreed that loneliness was a ‘feature’ of Hinckley’s life, but he added that studies have shown that ‘loneliness is as common as the common cold in winter’ ” (Washington Post).

A separate, grammatical danger of quoting in fragments is seen here: “Although he refused to be drawn on the future of the factory, Sir Kenneth said that the hope of finding a buyer ‘was not out of the question’ ” (Times). Clearly Sir Kenneth would have said, “That is not out of the question,” not “That was not out of the question.” In quoted material, even when fragmentary, the tense must be preserved.

A final problem is the tendency of some writers to put the words of one person into the mouths of many, as here: “ Witnesses at the scene said that there was ‘a tremendous bang and then all hell broke loose’ ” (Guardian). The comment should be paraphrased or attributed to just one witness.
rack, wrack. “You didn’t need a medical diploma to see that Williams was wracked with pain” (*New York Times*). Wrack is an archaic variant of wreck and now almost never appears except in the expression wrack and ruin. Rack, the word intended in the quotation, means to put under strain. The expressions are nerve-racking and to rack one’s brains.

radius. The plural can be either radii or radiuses.

raining cats and dogs. No one knows what inspired this expression, but it is worth noting that in 1738, when Jonathan Swift condemned it, it was already hackneyed.

ranges of figures. “Profits in the division were expected to rise by between $35 and $45 million” (*Observer*). Although most people will see at once that the writer meant to indicate a range of $10 million, literally she was saying that profits could be as little as $35 or as much as $45 million. If you mean “between $35 million and $45 million,” it is generally better to say so.

rapt, wrapped. One is rapt in thought, not wrapped. Rapt means engrossed, absorbed, enraptured.

rarefy, rarefaction, not rari-, are the preferred spellings.

ravage, ravish. The first means to lay waste. The second means to rape or carry off—or, a touch confusingly, to enrapture. Clearly, in all senses, for both words, care needs to be exercised to avoid confusion.

raze. “Another Las Vegas landmark was razed to the ground over the weekend” (*USA Today*). The ground is the only place to which a structure can be razed. It is enough to say that a building has been razed.
react should be reserved for spontaneous responses (“He reacted to the news by fainting”). It should not be used to indicate responses marked by reflection, as it was here: “The Vice President’s lawyers were not expected to react to the court’s decision before Monday at the earliest” (Los Angeles Times).

reason . . . is because is a common construction, and has been for at least two hundred years, but it continues to be criticized as a tautology by many authorities. Consider an example from the Observer: “The reason she spends less and less time in England these days is because her business interests keep her constantly on the move.” Those authorities who object to such constructions (and not all do) maintain that the sentence would be better with because deleted or replaced with that. They are right about the tautology but, I would submit, wrong (or at least somewhat off beam) about the remedy. The fault in such sentences lies at the front end. Remove the reason and its attendant verb is and in most cases a crisper, more focused sentence emerges: “She spends less and less time in England these days because her business interests keep her constantly on the move.”

reason why, like reason is . . . because (see above), is generally redundant. Consider these two examples: “Grover said her contract had been terminated, but no one at the company would tell her the reason why” (San Francisco Chronicle); “His book argues that the main reason why inner-city blacks are in such a sorry state is not because whites are prejudiced but because low-skilled jobs near their homes are disappearing” (Economist). An improvement can nearly always be effected by removing one word or the other—e.g., the reason from the first example, why from the second.

reckless. Not wreckless, unless you are describing a setting in which there are no wrecks.

reconstruction. “The play is a dramatic reconstruction of what might happen when a combination of freak weather conditions threatens to flood London” (Times). As a moment’s reflection should have made apparent to the writer, you cannot reconstruct an event that has not yet happened.

refute, confute, rebut. “McGuinness vehemently refuted all such allegations” (Chicago Tribune). Refute means to show conclusively that an allegation is wrong. It does not mean simply to dispute or deny a contention, as was evidently
intended in the example. *Confute* has the same meaning as *refute*. About that there is no issue.

More problematic, however, is *rebut*. Some dictionaries suggest that it means the same as *refute*—that is, that it signifies proving a charge wrong—while others maintain that it means merely to answer a charge or claim, not necessarily to disprove it. For that reason the word should be employed cautiously.

**regretfully, regrettably.** The first means with feelings of regret: “Regretfully, they said their farewells.” The second means unfortunately: “Regrettably, I did not have enough money to buy it.”

**relatively,** like *comparatively*, should not be used unless you wish to convey some sense of a comparison or relationship. As often as not, the word can be removed without loss, as here: “The group has taken the relatively bold decision to expand its interests in Nigeria” (*Times*). See also *comparatively*.

**remunerate.** *Metathesis* is the term for transposing sounds or letters, which is what often happens with this word, as here: “Mr. Strage said in the witness box that he was to receive fair remuneration for his work” (*Independent*). The urge to associate *remunerate* with words of quantity like *numeral* and *enumerate* is understandable, but in fact the words spring from different sources. *Remunerate* comes from the Latin *munus* (by which it is related to *munificent*). *Numeral*, *enumerate*, and other related words come from the Latin *numerus*.

**rendezvous** is the spelling for both the singular and the plural.

**repel, repulse.** Not to be confused. *Repulse* means to drive back: “The army repulsed the enemy’s attack.” It should not be confused with *repulsive*, meaning to cause repugnance. *Repel* is the word for causing squeamishness or distaste: “The idea of eating squid repelled her.”

**replica.** Properly, a replica is an exact copy, built to the same scale as the original and using the same materials. To use the word when you might better use *model, miniature, or copy* is always inexact and sometimes faintly preposterous, as here: “One of the museum’s more eccentric displays is a replica of the Taj Mahal made entirely from toothpicks” (*St. Louis Post-Dispatch*).
**respite.** “Even Saudi Arabia’s assurance that it would not cut oil prices provided no more than a temporary respite” (*Daily Telegraph*). The expression is common but redundant. A respite can only be temporary. *Brief respite* is also common and also nearly always redundant. *Respite*, incidentally, rhymes with *cesspit*, not with *despite*.

**responsible.** Though some may find the stricture a trifle pedantic, it is perhaps worth noting that a few authorities continue to hold that responsibility for events can lie only with people and not with things. Poor maintenance might be responsible for a fire, but lightning could not be. Lightning could cause a fire or ignite a fire, but it could not properly be said to be responsible for it.

**restaurateur.** I recently watched a food program, on a cable network devoted to food programs, in which the presenter repeatedly referred to the proprietor of a restaurant as a “restauranter.” If you don’t know it already, note now that there is no *n* in *restaurateur*.

**restive.** Originally the word meant balky, refusing to move or budge, but through confusion it has come to be used more and more as a synonym for *restless*. Most dictionaries now recognize both senses, but if the word is to have any special value, it should contain at least some suggestion of resistance. A crowd of protesters may grow restive upon the arrival of mounted police, but a person sitting uncomfortably on a hard bench is better described as restless.

**revert back** is commonly seen and always redundant: “If no other claimant can be found, the right to the money will revert back to her” (*Daily Telegraph*). Delete *back*.

**re- words.** Somewhat mystifyingly, many publications show a formidable resistance to putting hyphens into any word beginning with *re-.* Yet often the presence or absence of a hyphen can usefully and immediately denote a difference in meaning, as between *recollect* (remember) and *re-collect* (collect again), or between *recede* (withdraw) and *re-cede* (give back again, as with territory). My advice, for what it is worth, is always to insert a hyphen if you think it might reduce the chance of even momentary misunderstanding.

**Richter scale** for the standard measure of earthquake magnitudes. It is named for Charles Richter of the California Institute of Technology, who invented it in
the 1930s. The scale increases at a rate that is exponential rather than linear, making each level of increment vastly greater than most people realize. According to Charles Officer and Jake Page in *Tales of the Earth*, a magnitude 8.3 earthquake is 50 times stronger than a magnitude 7.3 quake and 2,500 times stronger than a magnitude 6.3 quake. In practical terms, this means that Richter magnitudes are largely meaningless to most readers and comparisons involving two or more Richter measurements are totally meaningless. It is considerate to the reader to provide, wherever possible, some basis of comparison beyond the bare Richter numbers. It is also worth bearing in mind that the Richter scale measures only the magnitude of an earthquake at its point of origin and says little or nothing about the degree of devastation at ground level.


**rottweiler** for the breed of dog. Note two t’s, one l.

**row to hoe.** As well as being dangerously close to cliché, the phrase is subject to a curious form of transliteration, as here: “It could change your life forever—a hard enough road to hoe” (*HQ* magazine). As a moment’s thought should confirm, it would be an odd road indeed that is hoed.
saccharin, saccharine. The first is an artificial sweetener; the second means sugary.

sacrilegious. Sometimes misspelled sacreligious on the mistaken assumption that religious is part of the word. It isn’t.

Sahara. “His intention is to cross the Sahara Desert alone” (San Francisco Chronicle). Sahara means desert, so the common expression Sahara Desert is clearly redundant.

St. Catherine’s College, Oxford, but St. Catharine’s College, Cambridge.

St. James’s. See COURT OF ST. JAMES’S.

St. Kitts-Nevis is the common name for the Caribbean state formally known as the Federation of St. Christopher and Nevis.

salutary. Not -tory. For a discussion of its usage, see HEALTHY, HEALTHFUL, SALUTARY.

Salvadoran, not -ean, for a person or thing from El Salvador.

Sam Browne, not Brown, for the type of belt worn diagonally across the chest.

sanatorium, sanitarium. Both are somewhat archaic terms for institutional retreats designed to improve or restore people’s health. They can be treated as synonyms, though clearly you should stick to one form or the other in any particular piece of writing. Note that the first is spelled sana-, the second sani-.

sandal for the type of shoe. Not sandle.
sanitary. Not -tory.

Sara Lee, not Sarah, for the U.S. food company.

Sauterne, Sauternes. The first is a sweet French wine; the second is the village in Gironde from which it comes.

savoir-faire, savoir-vivre. Both are French, of course. The first indicates social grace, the second good breeding.

Sca Fell and Scafell Pike are neighboring but separate mountains in the English Lake District. The latter is the highest eminence in England, at 3,206 feet.

scarves, scarfs. Either is correct for the plural of scarf.

scary. Not -ey.

Schiphol Airport, Amsterdam.

schwa, not schwah, for the phonetic symbol () representing an indeterminate unstressed sound akin to “uh,” as with the second and fourth vowel sounds of memorandum (i.e., mem--ran-dm).

scrutiny, scrutinize. To scrutinize something means to look at it with particular attentiveness. Thus qualifying words like close or careful are nearly always superfluous, as here: “But for all the good he did, Roosevelt did much that wouldn’t bear close scrutiny” (Boston Globe). Delete close and the sentence loses not only a word but also an aura of cliché.

Bernstein, who often cautioned against the solecism, actually commits it himself in The Careful Writer when he says, “Under close scrutiny, many constructions containing the word ‘not’ make no sense.” In the same volume he unwittingly underlines the point by urging writers to “scrutinize thoughtfully every phrase that eases itself almost mechanically onto the paper.” Had he followed his own advice, he no doubt would have omitted thoughtfully there.

scurrilous, which is most often encountered in the expression a scurrilous attack, does not mean disreputable or specious, though those senses are often
intended. It means grossly obscene or abusive. An attack must be exceedingly harsh to be scurrilous.

**second largest** and similar comparisons often lead writers astray: “Japan is the second largest drugs market in the world after the United States” (*Times*). Not quite. It is the largest drugs market in the world after the United States, or it is the second largest drugs market in the world. The sentence above could be fixed by placing a comma after *world*.


**seismograph, seismometer, seismogram.** Occasionally, and perhaps understandably, confused. A seismometer is a sensor placed in the ground to record earthquakes and other vibrations. A seismograph is the instrument that records the seismometer’s readings. A seismogram is the printout or chart that provides a visual record of seismic activity.

**self-confessed**, as in “a self-confessed murderer,” is usually tautological. In most cases, *confessed* alone is enough.

**sensual, sensuous.** The words are only broadly synonymous. *Sensual* applies to a person’s baser instincts, as distinguished from reason. It should always hold connotations of sexual allure or lust. *Sensuous* was coined by Milton to avoid those connotations and to suggest instead the idea of being alive to sensations. It should be used when no suggestion of sexual arousal is intended.

**sentences, length of.** Occasionally a proliferation of connecting words produces a sentence that simply runs away with itself. I offer, without additional comment, the following as a classic of its type: “But dramatic price shifts are not expected by the oil companies because retail prices are already claimed to be about 8p a gallon cheaper than is justified by the drop in crude oil price which anyway because taxation accounts for 70 percent of the price of a retail gallon has a relatively limited impact” (*Times*).

**septuagenarian** for a person in his or her seventies. Note the *u*, which occasionally goes astray, as here: “Even Chairman Mao created his own athletic image with his septuagenarian plunge into the Yangtze” (*Sunday Times*).
Serengeti for the plain and famed national park in Tanzania. Not -getti.

serving, servicing. “Cable TV should be servicing half the country within five years” (Daily Mail). Bulls service cows. Mechanics service faulty machinery. But cable TV systems serve the country. Servicing is reserved for the idea of installation and maintenance. Serve is the better word for describing things that are of general and continuing benefit.

Shakespearean, Shakespearian. The first is the usual spelling in America and the second is the usual spelling in Britain, but, interestingly, don’t look to The Oxford English Dictionary for guidance on any spellings concerning England’s greatest poet. Perversely and charmingly, but entirely unhelpfully, the OED insists on spelling the name Shakspere, a decision it based on one of the six spellings Shakespeare himself used. It does, however, acknowledge that Shakespeare is “perhaps” the commonest spelling now used.

shall, will. Authorities have been trying to pin down the vagaries and nuances of shall and will since the seventeenth century. In The King’s English, the Fowler brothers devote twenty pages to the matter. The gist of what they have to say is that either you understand the distinctions instinctively or you do not; that if you don’t, you probably never will; and that if you do, you don’t need to be told anyway.

The rule most frequently propounded is that to express simple futurity you should use shall in the first person and will in the second and third persons, and to express determination (or volition) you should do the reverse. But by that rule Churchill blundered grammatically when he vowed, “We shall fight in the fields and in the streets, we shall fight in the hills; we shall never surrender.” As did MacArthur when he said at Corregidor, “I shall return.” As have all those who have ever sung “We Shall Overcome.”

The simple fact is that whether you use shall or will in a given instance depends very much on your age and your birthplace and the emphasis with which you mean to express yourself. The English tend to use shall more frequently and more specifically than do the Scots or the Irish or Americans, but even in England the distinctions are rapidly fading and by no means fixed.

In short, it is not possible to make rigid rules to distinguish between the two,
and (dare I say it?) the distinctions are no longer all that important anyway.


shambles. Used in the sense of a mess or muddle, the word has long been resisted by purists, notably Fowler, who cited this as a slipshod usage: “The Colonial Secretary denied . . . that the conference on the future of Malta had been a shambles.” Shambles originally meant a slaughterhouse, and by extension it came to be used to describe any scene of carnage or bloodshed. That remains its primary meaning, but the looser sense of mere disorderliness is now well established. The Concise Oxford gives that meaning without comment.

Shangri-La, not -la, for the Himalayan paradise created by James Hilton in the 1933 novel Lost Horizon.

Shepherd Market, but Shepherd’s Bush, both in London.

Shetland or the Shetland Islands is the accepted designation for the Scottish islands. The Shetlands is frowned on by some and thus better avoided. See also ORKNEY.


“Sign of Four, The,” not the Four, for the Sherlock Holmes story.

since. “She gave strong support to the visions of the late Bernard Kilgore and the other executives and editors who operated the Journal and Dow Jones since World War II” (Wall Street Journal); “Since April the Inland Revenue stopped giving immediate tax refunds to those who were unlucky enough to become unemployed” (Times). Since indicates action starting at a specified time in the past and continuing up to the present. The verbs in sentences in which it appears must also indicate action that is still continuing—that is, they should be have operated in the first instance and has stopped in the second.

Sisyphus, not -ss-. In Greek mythology, Sisyphus was a king of Corinth who was condemned for eternity to push a heavy stone up a hill, only to have it roll down again. Hence Sisyphean describes some endless task.
situation is almost always needlessly deployed in constructions such as this: “The exchange . . . had failed to be alert to the potential of a crisis situation as it developed” (New York Times). More often than not the word can be deleted without loss.

skulduggery. Some dictionaries, such as the American Heritage, prefer to spell the word skulduggery, but there appears to be no etymological basis for adding a second l. So far as is known, the word has nothing to do with the bony part of the head. It is a modified form of sculdudderie (or sculdudderery), a word of uncertain provenance, which originally signified sexual misbehavior.

sleight of hand, not slight. Sleight, meaning dexterity or deceptiveness, comes from the Old Norse sloedgh, and slight, meaning slender or frail, comes from the Old Norse slettr, but they have nothing else in common except their pronunciations.

sneaked, snuck. “Hurley said at least three of the protesters snuck in through a service entrance” (Minneapolis Star). The day may well come when snuck supersedes sneaked—it probably already has done so in speech—but for the moment it is worth bearing in mind that most authorities continue to regard it as nonstandard. Use sneaked instead.

so as to. The first two words can generally be deleted without loss, as they might have been here: “The rest of the crowd stuffed hot dogs into their faces so as to avoid being drawn into the discussion” (New York Times).

some. Many journalists of a certain age appear to have had it drilled into them that some in the sense of an unknown or unquantifiable number is a casualism to be avoided at all costs, as in “There were some forty passengers on the ship.” The belief is without any real basis. The sense of approximately or about has long been well established. However, there is at least one good reason for regarding the word with suspicion. Consider this passage from a New York Times article: “Since 1981, according to Hewitt’s survey of some 530 companies, some 24,000 employees quit jobs under such plans. Last year alone, some 74 plans were in effect.” Particularly when used repeatedly, the word lends writing a timid and equivocal ring, leaving the impression that the reporter lacked the resolve or initiative to find out just how many companies, plans, and employees actually were involved. “Some forty passengers” and the like are
defensible when the reference is incidental or in passing, but when the figures are integral to a discussion, *some* can look decidedly slapdash and is generally better replaced by more positive expressions: “more than 500 companies,” “an estimated 24,000 employees,” “at least 70 plans.” In any case, the writer could delete the middle *some* in the example above (“some 24,000 employees”) without the slightest danger of being overrash. Large round numbers are normally construed as being approximate. You do not need to qualify them.

**sometime, some time.** Most often it is one word: “They will arrive sometime tomorrow.” But when *some* is used as an adjective equivalent to *a short* or *a long* or *an indefinite*, it should be two words: “The announcement was made some time ago.”

Three considerations may help you to make the distinction.

1. *Some time* as two words is usually preceded by a preposition (“for some time,” “at some time”) or followed by a helping word (“some time ago”).

2. *Some time* can always be replaced with an equivalent expression (“a short time ago,” “a long time ago,” etc.); *sometime* cannot.

3. When speaking, a person places greater stress on *time* when *some time* is two words.

**sort.** “Mr. Hawkins said that Mr. Webster was a pretty seasoned operator when it came to dealing with these sort of things” *(Times)*. Make it “this sort of thing” or “these sorts of things.”

**spate.** “The recent spate of takeover offers has focused attention on the sector” *(Observer)*. The reference here was to half a dozen takeover offers—a flurry. *Spate* should be used to describe a torrent. See also PLETHORA.

**special, especial.** The first means for a particular purpose, the second to a high degree. A special meal may be especially delicious. See also ESPECIALLY, SPECIALLY.

**split compound verbs.** Some writers, apparently inspired by a misguided dread of split infinitives (which see), are equally fastidious about not breaking up compound verbs, whatever the cost to idiom and clarity. (A compound verb is
one made up of two elements, such as has been, will go, is doing.) Consider the
following: “It is yet to be demonstrated that a national magazine effectively can
cover cable listings” (Wall Street Journal); “Hitler never has been portrayed
with more credibility” (Boston Globe); “It always has stood as one of the last
great events in amateur sports” (Los Angeles Times).

It cannot be stressed vigorously enough that there is no harm in placing an
adverb between the two elements of a compound verb. It contravenes no rule and
flouts no authority. It is usually the natural place, and frequently the only place,
for an adverb to go.

There are, of course, many instances in which the adverb can happily stand
apart from the compound verb—“He was working feverishly”; “You must go
directly to bed”; “The time is passing quickly”—but forcibly evicting it for the
sake of making words conform to some arbitrary pattern does no service to any
passage.

split infinitives. It is almost certainly safe to say that the number of people who
would never knowingly split an infinitive is a good deal larger than the number
of people who can confidently say what an infinitive is and does. That may
account for the number of misconceptions that litter the issue. One is the belief
that the split infinitive is a grammatical error. It is not. If it is an error at all, it is
a rhetorical fault—a question of style—and not a grammatical one. Another is
the curiously persistent belief that the split infinitive is widely condemned by
authorities. That too is untrue. Almost no authority flatly condemns it.

The problem of the split infinitive arises because of a conflict between the
needs of the infinitive and the needs of an adverb. The natural position for the
two elements of a full infinitive is together: “He proceeded to climb the ladder.”
With adverbs the most natural position is, very generally, just before the verb:
“He slowly climbed the ladder.” The conflict comes when the two are brought
together: “He proceeded to slowly climb the ladder.”

The authorities almost unanimously agree that there is no reason to put the
needs of the infinitive above the needs of the adverb. In practice the problem can
usually be sidestepped. Most adverbs are portable and can be moved to a
position from which they can perform their function without interfering with the
infinitive. In the example above, for instance, we could say, “He proceeded to
climb the ladder slowly” or “Slowly he proceeded to climb the ladder.” But that is not to say that there is any grammatical basis for regarding the infinitive as inviolable. Sometimes, indeed, it is all but impossible not to split the infinitive and preserve any sense. Bernstein cites these constructions, all crying out to be left alone: “to more than double,” “to at least maintain,” “to all but ensure.”

If you wish, you may remain blindly intolerant of the split infinitive, but you should do so with the understanding that you are without the support of a single authority of standing. Even Partridge, normally the most conservative of arbiters, is against you. He says: “Avoid the split infinitive wherever possible; but if it is the clearest and most natural construction, use it boldly. The angels are on our side.”

**spoonfuls,** not spoonsful or spoons full. Bernstein cites the following: “Now throw in two tablespoons full of chopped parsley and cook ten minutes more. The quail ought to be tender by then.” As he drily adds, “Never mind the quail; how are we ever going to get those tablespoons tender?”

**stalactite, stalagmite.** Stalactites point downward, stalagmites upward.

**stalemate.** “Senators back rise in proposed oil tax as stalemate ends” (*New York Times* headline). Stalemates don’t end. A chess match that reaches stalemate is not awaiting a more decisive outcome; the stalemate is the outcome. *Standoff*, the word the writer probably had in mind, or *deadlock* would have been a much better choice here.

**Stamford, Stanford.** Occasionally confused. Stamford is the name of notable communities in Connecticut and the English county of Lincolnshire. Stanford is the university in Palo Alto, California. The intelligence test is the Stanford-Binet test.

**stanch, staunch.** “He showed how common soldiers . . . had fought their fears, staunched their wounds, and met their deaths” (*Newsweek*). Although *staunch* is given as an acceptable variant by most dictionaries, *stanch* is still generally the preferred spelling for the verb (meaning to stem the flow of, as with blood). As an adjective, *staunch* is the only spelling (“a staunch supporter”).

**stationary, stationery.** The difference in spelling goes back centuries, though
etymologically there isn’t any basis for it. Both words come from the Latin *stationarius* and both originally meant “standing in a fixed position.” Stationers were tradesmen, usually booksellers, who sold their wares from a fixed spot. Today in Britain stationery is still sold by stationers, which makes the misspelling there less excusable, if no less frequent. Stationery applies, incidentally, not just to writing paper and envelopes but to all office materials. Strictly speaking, paper clips and pencils are stationery.

**straitlaced** is misspelled woefully often, as here: “Dr. Belsky . . . describes himself as quite straight-laced and dutiful as a boy” (*New York Times*). Strait means confined and restricted, as in *straitened circumstances* or *straitjacket* (also frequently misspelled). Apart from the pronunciation, it has nothing in common with *straight*.

**strata, stratum.** The first is sometimes used when the second is intended, as it was here: “They dug into another strata and at last found what they were looking for” (*Daily Express*). A single level is a *stratum*. *Strata* signifies more than one.

**Stratford-on-Avon, Stratford-upon-Avon.** Most gazetteers and other reference sources give *Stratford-upon-Avon* as the correct name for the Warwickshire town. Some, like *The Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors*, are quite insistent about it. But it is worth noting that the local authority calls itself Stratford-on-Avon District Council. Thus, to be strictly accurate, you would have to accord the town one preposition and the council another.

**strived, strove.** Either is acceptable.

**stupefied, stupefaction.** All too often misspelled, as here: “The 57-year-old evangelist denies four charges of rape and three of administering a stupifying drug” (*Independent*). Don’t confuse the spelling with *stupid*. A similar erroneous exchange of *i* for *e* often happens with *liquefy* and *liquefaction* and *rarefy* and *rarefaction*.

**subjunctives.** The subjunctive, one of the four moods of verbs, has been slipping from use in English for decades. It is the mood seen in sentences like “Although he die now, his name will live forever.” Though once very common, it scarcely features in English now except in three types of construction. These are:
1. In certain stock phrases: *be that as it may*, *far be it from me*, *so be it*, *as it were*, *God forbid*, and many others. These are well established as idioms and normally cause no trouble.

2. In expressions involving suppositions or hypotheses: “If I were you, I wouldn’t go”; “If she were in my position, she’d do the same thing,” etc. These are the most problematic form of the subjunctive for most users and are discussed at some length under *will*, *would* and *if*.

3. Following verbs of command or request. Interestingly, this problem scarcely exists in the United States or Canada, where this form of the subjunctive has never lost its currency, but it is endlessly encountered in Britain at all levels of writing—to such an extent that a foreign visitor could well conclude that sentences such as those that follow are correct in British usage. (They are not. In each, I have given the correct form of the verb in brackets.) “The Senate has now rewritten the contract insisting that the Navy considers [*consider*] other options” (*Daily Mail*); “OPEC’s monitoring committee has recommended that the cartel’s output ceiling remains [*remain*] unchanged” (*Observer*); “No wonder the Tory Party turned him down as a possible candidate, suggesting he went away [*go away*] and came back [*come back*] with a better public image” (*Guardian*). It might help to imagine placing a *should* just before the problem verb (e.g., “suggesting he should go away”). Gowers in fact points out that such sentences would be better in British usage if *should* were inserted in every instance. It certainly wouldn’t hurt.

**substitute** should be followed only by *for*. You substitute one thing for another. If you find yourself following the word with *by* or *with* or any other preposition, you should choose another verb.

**successfully** is another of those words that often creep unnecessarily into sentences, as here: “Japanese researchers have successfully developed a semiconductor chip made of gallium arsenide” (*Associated Press*). They could hardly have unsuccessfully developed one. Delete *successfully*.

**supersede** is one of the most frequently misspelled words. Those who habitually make it *supercede* may take some comfort in knowing that the word caused just as much trouble to the ancient Romans, who often could not decide between *superseder* and *supercedere*. *Supercede* was an acceptable variant in
early English usage, but no longer.

**Suriname, Surinam.** Confusion still sometimes arises concerning the name of this small South American country. The *Encarta World English Dictionary*, for instance, calls it *Suriname* under its main entry but labels it *Surinam* on a map elsewhere in the same volume. The spelling *Surinam* can now safely be regarded as historic and *Suriname* as the preferred modern spelling. The Suriname River and Surinam toad also take the modern spelling.

**surrounded.** “Often shrouded by fog and surrounded on three sides by surging seas, the gray stone lighthouse looms like a medieval keep” (*Time* magazine); “. . . and, to their dismay, they found that they were now completely surrounded by water” (*Outside* magazine). The first usage is wrong, the second superfluous. If you are not fully encircled, you are not surrounded. *Surrounded* should be changed in the first example to *cut off* or *bordered*, and *completely* should be deleted from the second.
Tallinn for the capital of Estonia.

Taoiseach for the Prime Minister of Ireland.

tarantella for the type of Neapolitan dance. Not to be confused, of course, with tarantula, the type of spider.

target. To most people there are just two things you can do with a target: you can hit it or you can miss it. But for journalists, politicians, economists, and businesspeople, targets are things to be achieved, attained, exceeded, expanded, reduced, obtained, met, beaten, and overtaken. As a consequence, their statements, if taken literally, can become absurd, as here: “More welcome news came with the announcement that the public sector borrowing requirement now appears likely to undershoot its target for the full year” (Times). An archer who undershoots a target will be chagrined. A politician will apparently be pleased. The reader may merely be puzzled.

In practice, target often is the most efficient word for conveying a point, even if the literal meaning is sometimes strained, but it is worth seeing if objective or plan wouldn’t work as well.

Even more worth watching are instances in which target gets mixed up with other metaphors. Philip Howard cites this curious headline from The Times: “£6m ceiling keeps rise in earnings well within Treasury target.”

tautology, redundancy, pleonasm, solecism. Although various authorities detect various shades of distinction between the first three words, those distinctions are always very slight and, on comparison, frequently contradictory. Essentially all three mean using more words than necessary to convey an idea.
Not all repetition is bad. It can be used for effect, as in poetry, or for clarity, or in deference to idiom. “OPEC countries,” “SALT talks” and “HIV virus” are all technically redundant because the second word is already contained in the preceding abbreviation, but only the ultra-finicky would deplore them. Similarly, in “Wipe that smile off your face” the last two words are tautological—there is no other place a smile could be—but the sentence would not stand without them.

On the whole, however, the use of more words than necessary is better avoided, although it can be found even in the most respectable usage guides, as here: “All writers and speakers of English, including these very grammarians themselves, omit words which will never be missed” (Bergen and Cornelia Evans, in A Dictionary of Contemporary American Usage). The expression “these very grammarians themselves” is patently redundant. It should be either “these grammarians themselves” or “these very grammarians” but not a combination of the two.

Finally, solecism describes any violation of idiom or grammar. Redundancies, tautologies, and pleonasms are all solecisms.

taxiing for the act of moving a plane into position.

Technicolor is a brand and company name and thus is capitalized.

temblor, not trem-, for an earthquake. It is etymologically related to tremble but lost its initial r while passing through Spanish (as temblar) before finding its way into American English in the late nineteenth century. Note that the word is not always widely recognized in English-speaking countries other than the United States.

than. Three small but common problems need noting.

1. In comparative constructions, than is often wrongly used, as here: “Nearly twice as many people die under twenty in France than in Great Britain” (cited by Gowers). Make it “as in Great Britain.”

2. It is wrongly used after hardly in sentences such as this: “Hardly had I landed at Liverpool than the Mikado’s death recalled me to Japan” (cited by Fowler). Make it “No sooner had I landed than” or “Hardly had I landed when.”
3. It is often a source of ambiguity in sentences of the following type: “She likes tennis more than me.” Does this mean that she likes tennis more than I do or that she likes tennis more than she likes me? In such cases, it is better to supply a second verb if it avoids ambiguity, e.g., “She likes tennis more than she likes me” or “She likes tennis more than I do.” See also I, ME.

that (as a conjunction). Whether you say “I think you are wrong” or “I think that you are wrong” is partly a matter of idiom but mostly a matter of preference. Some words usually require that (assert, contend, maintain) and some usually do not (say, think), but there are no hard rules. On the whole, it is better to dispense with that when it isn’t necessary.

that, which. To understand the distinctions between that and which it is necessary to understand restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses. Learning these distinctions is not, it must be said, anyone’s idea of a good time, but it is one technical aspect of grammar that every professional user of English should understand, because it is at the root of an assortment of grammatical errors.

A nonrestrictive, or nondefining, clause is one that can be regarded as parenthetical: “The tree, which had no leaves, was a birch.” The italicized words are effectively an aside and could be deleted. The real point of the sentence is that the tree was a birch; its leaflessness is incidental. A restrictive, defining, clause is one that is essential to the sense of the sentence. “The tree that had no leaves was a birch.” Here the leaflessness is a defining characteristic; it helps us to distinguish that tree from other trees.

In correct usage that is always used to indicate restrictive clauses and which to indicate nonrestrictive ones. Restrictive clauses should never be set off with commas and nonrestrictive clauses always should. On that much the authorities are agreed. Where divergence creeps in is on the question of how strictly the distinctions should be observed.

Until relatively recently they were not observed at all. In the King James Bible, for instance, we find “Render therefore unto Caesar the things which are Caesar’s; and unto God the things that are God’s.” The same quotation appears twice more in the Bible—one with that in both places and once with which in both. Today, that is more usual in short sentences or early on in longer ones (“The house that Jack built”; “The mouse that roared”). Which often appears
where *that* would more strictly be correct, particularly in Britain, as here: “It has outlined two broad strategies which it thinks could be put to the institutions” (*Times*).

Although there is ample precedent for using *which* in restrictive clauses, the practice is on the whole better avoided. At any rate, on some occasions the choice of *which* is clearly wrong, as here: “On a modest estimate, public authorities own 100,000 houses, which remain unoccupied for at least a year” (*Sunday Times*). What the writer meant was that of those houses that are publicly owned, at least 100,000 are left vacant for a year or more. Deleting the comma after *houses* and changing *which* to *that* would have made this immediately clear.

Another common fault—more a discourtesy to the reader than an error—is the failure to set off nonrestrictive clauses with commas, as here: “Four members of one of the world’s largest drug rings [,] which smuggled heroin worth £5 million into Britain [,] were jailed yesterday” (*Times*). That lapse is seen only rarely in America but is rife in Britain; it occurred five times more in the same article.

Americans, in contrast, are much more inclined to use *that* where *which* might be preferable, as here: “Perhaps, with the help of discerning decision-makers, the verb can regain its narrow definition that gave it a reason for being” (*Safire, On Language*). Had Safire written “can regain the narrow definition that gave it a reason for being,” all would be well. But the use of “its” gives the final clause the feel of a nondefining afterthought, and the sentence might be better rendered as “can regain its narrow definition, which gave it a reason for being.” The point is arguable.

“*Their’s not to reason why/Their’s but to do and die.*” See “*Ours is not to reason why, ours is but to do or die.*”

**thinking to oneself.** “Somehow he must have thought to himself that this unfamiliar line needed to be ascribed to someone rather more venerable” (*Sunday Telegraph*); “‘Can it be that the *Sunday Times Magazine* is paying no attention to my book?’ Frank Delaney was thinking to himself” (*Sunday Times*). Scrub “to himself” both times; there is no one else to whom you can think. Similarly vacuous is “in my mind” here: “I could picture in my mind where the bookkeeping offices had been” (*Boston Globe*).
though, although. The two are interchangeable except at the end of a sentence, where only *though* is correct (“He looked tired, though”), and with the expressions *as though* and *even though*, where idiom precludes *although.*

*Through the Looking-Glass and What Alice Found There* is the full, formal title of the 1871 Lewis Carroll classic. Note the hyphen in *Looking-Glass.*

tic douloureux for the disorder of the facial nerves. Its formal medical designation is trigeminal neuralgia.

time often has a curious magnetic effect, attracting extra words to sentences, as here: “Indeed, he likes to say that prostitution is a kind of time-share business, since the property in question is being occupied for a short length of time” (*New Yorker*). In the most literal way, the sentence could do with less length. Make it “for a short time” and you just say as much, but more crisply. Occasionally, *time* itself is superfluous, as in constructions of this sort: “The report will be available in two weeks time” (*Guardian*). *Time* adds nothing to the sentence but wordiness, and its deletion would obviate the need for an apostrophe after *weeks.*

time, at this moment in. Unless you are striving for an air of linguistic ineptitude, never use this expression. Say *now.*

to all intents and purposes is a tautology. “To all intents” is enough.

together with, along with. *With* in both expressions is a preposition, not a conjunction, and therefore does not govern the verb. This sentence is wrong: “They said the man, a motor mechanic, together with a 22-year-old arrested a day earlier, were being questioned” (*Times*). Make it “was being questioned.”

A separate danger with such expressions is seen here: “Barbara Tuchman, the historian, gave $20,000 to the Democrats, along with her husband, Lester” (*New York Times*). How Lester felt about being given to the Democrats wasn’t recorded.

ton, tonne. There are two kinds of ton: a long ton (used principally in the United Kingdom), weighing 2,240 pounds or 1,016 kilograms, and a short ton (used in the United States and Canada), weighing 2,000 pounds or 907 kilograms. *Tonne* is the British term for what in America is normally called a
metric ton; it weighs 2,204 pounds or 1,000 kilograms.

**tonnages of ships.** Deadweight tonnage is the amount of cargo a ship can carry. Displacement tonnage is the weight of the ship itself. Gross tonnage measures the theoretical capacity of a ship based on its dimensions. When you are using any of these terms, it is only fair to give the reader some idea of what each signifies.

**tortuous, torturous.** *Tortuous* means winding and circuitous (“The road wound tortuously through the mountains”). When used figuratively it usually suggests crookedness or deviousness (“a tortuous tax evasion scheme”). The word is thus better avoided if all you mean is complicated or convoluted. *Torturous* is the adjectival form of *torture* and describes the infliction of extreme pain. It is the word that should have been used here: “And only a tortuous number of repetitions could seriously increase your abdominal strength” (advertisement in *The New York Times*).

**total.** Three points to note:

1. *Total* is redundant and should be deleted when what it is qualifying already contains the idea of a totality, as here: “[They] risk total annihilation at the hands of the massive Israeli forces now poised to strike at the gates of the city” (*Washington Post*).

2. The expression *a total of*, though common, is also generally superfluous: “County officials said a total of eighty-four prisoners were housed in six cells” (*New York Times*). Make it “officials said eighty-four prisoners.” An exception is at the start of sentences, where it is desirable to avoid spelling out a large number, as in “A total of 2,112 sailors were aboard” instead of “Two thousand one hundred and twelve sailors were aboard.”

3. “A total of forty-five weeks was spent on the study” (*Times*) is wrong. As with *a number of* and *the number of*, the rule is to make it “the total of . . . was,” but “a total of . . . were.”

**to the tune of.** A hackneyed circumlocution. “The company is being subsidized to the tune of $500 million a year” would be more succinct as “The company is receiving a subsidy of $500 million a year.”
toward, towards. The first is the preferred form in America, the second in Britain, but either is correct. Untoward, however, is the only accepted form in both.

trademark, trade name. A trademark is a name, symbol, or other depiction that formally identifies a product. A trade name is the name of the maker, not of the product. Cadillac is a trademark, General Motors a trade name.

transatlantic. “The agreement came just in time to stop the authorities from taking away his permits to operate trans-Atlantic flights” (Sunday Times). Most dictionaries and stylebooks (but by no means all) prefer transatlantic. Similarly, transalpine, transarctic, transpacific.

translucent is sometimes wrongly treated as a synonym for transparent. A translucent material is one through which light passes but images cannot be clearly seen, as with frosted glass. Note also the spelling; it is not -scent.

triple, treble. Either word can be used as a noun, a verb, or an adjective. Except in certain musical senses (treble clef), triple is used almost exclusively for all three in America and is becoming increasingly preponderant in Britain.

trivia is, strictly speaking, a plural, and a few dictionaries recognize it only as such. “All this daily trivia is getting on my nerves” should be “All these daily trivia are getting on my nerves.” There is no singular form (the Latin trivium now has only historical applications), but there are the singular words trifle and triviality. The other option, if the plural form seems ungainly, is to convert trivia into an adjective: “All these trivial daily matters are getting on my nerves.”

Trooping the Colour. The annual event celebrating the British Queen’s official birthday, in June (as opposed to her actual birthday, in April), is not the Trooping of the Colour, as it is often written, even in Britain, but just Trooping the Colour.

true facts. “No one in the White House seems able to explain why it took such a potentially fatal time to inform the Vice President of the true facts” (Sunday Times). True facts is always redundant and wrong. All facts are true. Things that are not true are not facts.
**try and.** Although no longer resisted as strenuously as it once was, *try and* is still widely regarded as colloquial by many authorities and thus is better avoided in serious writing. “The Monopolies Commission will look closely at retailing mergers to try and prevent any lessening of competition” (*Sunday Times*). Make it “try to prevent.”

**tumult, turmoil.** Both describe confusion and agitation. The difference is that *tumult* applies only to people but *turmoil* applies to both people and things. *Tumultuous*, however, can describe things as well as people (“tumultuous applause,” “tumultuous seas”).

**turbid, turgid.** It is seldom possible to tell with certainty whether a writer is using *turgid* in its proper sense or is confusing it with *turbid*, but confusion would appear to be the case here: “She insisted on reading the entire turgid work aloud, a dusk-to-dawn affair that would have tried anyone’s patience” (*Sunday Times*). *Turgid* means inflated, grandiloquent, bombastic. It does not mean muddy or impenetrable, which meanings are covered by *turbid*.

**turpitude** does not signify rectitude or integrity, as is sometimes thought, but rather baseness or depravity. “He is a man of great moral turpitude” is not a compliment.

**Tussaud’s, Madame,** for the London waxworks museum. The apostrophe is not optional.
Uffizi Gallery, Florence.

**ukulele** for the stringed instrument. Not *uke-*.  

**Ullswater** for the lake in the English Lake District. Not *Uls-*.  

**Uluru** is now the formal and generally preferred name for Ayers Rock, in Australia. Pronounced *Oo-luh-roo*. It is part of Uluru-Kata Tjuta National Park. The resort alongside it is Yulara.

**unexceptionable, unexceptional.** Sometimes confused. Something that is unexceptional is ordinary, not outstanding (“an unexceptional wine”). Something that is unexceptionable is not open to objections (“In Britain, *grey* is the preferred spelling, but *gray* is unexceptionable”).

**unilateral, bilateral, multilateral.** All are often unneeded, as here: “Bilateral trade talks are to take place next week between Britain and Japan” (*Times*). Trade talks between Britain and Japan could hardly be other than two-sided. Delete *bilateral*.

**unique** means the only one of its kind, something incomparable. One thing cannot be more unique than another, as was thought here: “Lafayette’s most unique restaurant is now even more unique” (cited by Wood).

**unknown** is often used imprecisely, as here: “A hitherto unknown company called Ashdown Oil has emerged as a bidder for the Wytch Farm oil interests” (*Times*). A company must be known to someone, if only its directors. It would be better to call it a little-known company.

**unless and until.** One or the other, please.
**unlike.** When *unlike* is used as a preposition, it should govern a noun or pronoun or a noun equivalent (e.g., a gerund). “But unlike at previous sessions of the conference . . .” (*New York Times*) needs to be “But unlike previous sessions” or “As was not the case at previous sessions.”

*Unlike* must also contrast things that are comparable, which was not done here: “Unlike the proposal by Rep. Albert Gore, outlined in this space yesterday, the President is not putting forth a blueprint for a final treaty” (*Chicago Tribune*). As written, the sentence is telling us that a proposal is unlike the President. It should be “Unlike the proposal by Rep. Albert Gore, the President’s plan does not put forth a blueprint” or words to that effect.

**until, till, ’til, ’till.** The first two are legitimate and interchangeable. The second two are wrong and, indeed, illiterate.

**untimely death** is a common but really quite inane expression. When was a death ever timely?

**up.** When used as a phrasal verb (which see), *up* is often just a hitchhiker, joining sentences only for the ride. Occasionally idiom dictates that we include it: we look up a word in a book, we dig up facts, we move up in our careers. But often its appearance is entirely needless, as in these examples: “Another time, another tiger ate up twenty-seven of Henning’s thirty prop animals” (*Washington Post*); “Plans to tighten up the rules . . . of the National Health Service were announced yesterday” (*Times*); “This could force the banks to lift up their interest rates” (*Financial Times*). In these and countless other cases, *up* should be unceremoniously expunged. Sometimes in its eagerness *up* moves to the front of words: “With the continued upsurge in sales of domestic appliances . . .” (*Times*). Although *upsurge* is a recognized word, it seldom means more than *surge.*

**use, usage.** *Usage* normally appears only in the context of formal practices, particularly in regard to linguistics (“modern English usage”), and *use* does duty for all other senses, but most dictionaries recognize the words as interchangeable in nearly all contexts.

**usual.** A common oversight in newspapers, no doubt attributable to haste, is telling readers twice in a sentence that a thing is customary. Both of the
following are from *The New York Times*: “The usual procedure normally involved getting eyewitness reports of one or more acts of heroism”; “Customarily, such freezes are usually imposed at the end of a fiscal year.”
Delete something. See also HABITS.

**utilize.** In its strictest sense, *utilize* means to make the best use of something that wasn’t intended for the job (“He utilized a coat hanger to repair his automobile”). It can be legitimately extended to mean making the most practical use of something (“Although the hills were steep, the rice farmers utilized every square inch of the land”), but in all other senses *use* is better.
Van Dyck, Vandyke. The seventeenth-century painter, whose name can be found variously spelled, was born Anton Van Dijck, but that spelling is almost never encountered outside his native Belgium. In America his name is usually rendered as Sir Anthony Vandyke, though Van Dyck (the spelling favored in Britain) is also sometimes found. In both countries, objects associated with him are spelled Vandyke—e.g., a Vandyke beard, a Vandyke collar.

various different is inescapably repetitive.

venal, venial. Venial, from the Latin venialis (“forgivable”), means excusable; a venial sin is a minor one. Venal means corruptible. It comes from the Latin venalis (“for sale”) and describes someone who is capable of being bought.

venerate, worship. Although in figurative senses the words are interchangeable, in religious contexts worship should apply only to God. Roman Catholics, for instance, worship God but venerate saints.

ventricles for the heart valves. Not ventricals.

vermilion. “The great naval powers of Europe . . . all competed for control of the trade in nutmeg and mace (the vermilion-colored membrane that encases the nut)” (New Yorker). Although most dictionaries accept vermilion as an alternative spelling, vermilion is the preferred and very much more common spelling.

very should be made to pay its way in sentences. Too often it is used where it adds nothing to sense (“It was a very tragic death”) or is inserted in a futile effort to prop up a weak word that should be replaced by something with more punch (“The play was very good”).
viable. “Such a system would mark a breakthrough in efforts to come up with a commercially viable replacement for internal-combustion engines” (Newsweek). Properly, viable does not mean feasible or workable or promising, senses in which it is frequently used. It means capable of independent existence, and its use really ought to be confined to that meaning. Even when it is correctly used, it tends to make the sentence read like a government document, as here: “Doing nothing about the latter threatens the viability of the lakes and woodlands of the northeastern states” (Chicago Tribune). Deleting “the viability of” would shorten the sentence without altering its sense.

vichyssoise for the soup. Note -ss-.

vicissitude for a change or variation. Although there is no compelling reason for it, the word is almost always used in the plural.

vitreous, vitriform. The first describes something made or having the quality of glass. The second means to have the appearance of glass.

vocal cords. Not to be confused with chords (groups of musical notes), as happens all too often: “Understudy Nancy Ringham will play opposite Rex Harrison because Miss Kennedy has problems with her vocal chords” (Evening Standard). Vocal cords are so called because of their shape and structure, not because of their tonal qualities.

volcanology, vulcanology. Both are terms for the science of volcanoes. The first is the preferred American spelling, the second the preferred British one.

vortexes, vortices. For the plural of vortex, either is correct.
waiver, waver. The first is a relinquishment of a claim; the second means to hesitate.

Wal-Mart for the discount-store group. The company’s full name is Wal-Mart Stores Inc. See also KMART.

“Water, water, everywhere/Nor any drop to drink” are the lines from the Samuel Taylor Coleridge poem “The Rime of the Ancient Mariner.”

way, shape, or form. “Some people may be amused by that kind of behavior, but I don’t like it in any way, shape, or form” (Cleveland Plain Dealer). Choose any one—but only one, please.

wean means to be parted from something that is no longer needed. Babies are weaned from their mothers’ milk, for instance. You often hear wean used wrongly in the almost opposite sense of being a central and continuing part of one’s upbringing, as in “The challenge is to attract youths weaned on raunchy rap music” (New York Times). The simple rule is that if you can’t follow wean with from, you need another word or phrase—raised, trained, brought up on, or any of several others.

weather conditions. “Freezing weather conditions will continue for the rest of the week” (Times). Delete conditions. Similarly tiresome is the weather forecasters’ fondness for activity, as in “thunderstorm activity over the Plains states.”

Weddell Sea, Antarctica.

Wedgwood china. Not Wedge-.
Weidenfeld and Nicolson for the British publisher. Not -field, not Nich-.

Western Australia for the Australian state, but The West Australian for its largest newspaper.

Westmorland, not -more-, for the former English county, now part of Cumbria.

what at the beginning of a sentence often indicates a statement that could do with another look. “What has characterized her evidence—and indeed the entire case—is the constant name-dropping” (Sunday Times) would be shorter and more active as “Her evidence—and indeed the entire case—has been characterized by constant name-dropping.”

whence. “And man will return to the state of hydrogen from whence he came” (Sunday Telegraph). Although there is ample precedent for from whence—the King James Bible has the sentence “I will lift up mine eyes unto the hills, from whence cometh my help”—it is nonetheless tautological. Whence means “from where.” It is enough to say “to the state of hydrogen whence he came.”

whether or not. The second two words should be dropped when whether is equivalent to if, as here: “It is not yet known whether or not persons who become reinfected can spread the virus to other susceptible individuals” (New York Times). Or not is necessary, however, when what is being stressed is an alternative: “I intend to go whether or not you like it.”

whet one’s appetite. Not wet. The word has nothing to do with heightened salivary flow or anything of the like. It comes from an Old English word, hwettan, meaning “sharpen.” Hence also whetstone, for a stone used to sharpen knives.

which. The belief that which may refer only to the preceding word and not to the whole of a preceding statement is without foundation except where there is a chance of ambiguity. The impossibility of enforcing the rule consistently is illustrated by an anecdote cited by Gowers. A class in Philadelphia had written to a local paper’s resident usage expert asking him what was wrong with the sentence “He wrecked the car, which was due to his carelessness.” Notice how the authority hoists himself with the last three words of his reply: “The fault lies
in using which to refer to the statement ‘He wrecked the car.’ When which follows a noun, it refers to that noun as its antecedent. Therefore in the foregoing sentence it is stated that the car was due to his carelessness, which is nonsense.” See also that, which.

**whitish** for the color. Not white-.

**whiz kid,** not whizz-, is generally the preferred spelling, though most dictionaries recognize both. The same applies for whiz-bang, but with the addition of a hyphen.

**who, whom.** For those who are perennially baffled by the distinction between these two relative pronouns, it may come as some comfort to know that Shakespeare, Addison, Ben Jonson, Dickens, Churchill, and the translators of the King James Bible have equally been flummoxed in their time.

The rule can be stated simply. Whom is used when it is the object of a preposition (“To whom it may concern”) or verb (“The man whom we saw last night”) or the subject of a complementary infinitive (“The person whom we took to be your father”). Who is used on all other occasions.

Consider now three examples in which the wrong choice has been made: “Mrs. Hinckley said that her son had been upset by the murder of Mr. Lennon, who he idolized” (New York Times); “Colombo, whom law enforcement officials have said is the head of a Mafia family in Brooklyn . . .” (New York Times); “Heartbreaking decision—who to save” (headline in The Times). We can check the correctness of such sentences by imagining them as he/him constructions. For instance, would you say that “Hinckley idolized he” or “idolized him”? Would law enforcement officers say that “he is the head of a Mafia family” or “him is the head”? And is it a heartbreaking decision over whether to save he or to save him?

Simple, isn’t it? Well, not quite. When the relative pronoun follows a preposition in a relative clause, this simple test falls to pieces. Consider this sentence from Fortune: “They rent it to whomever needs it.” Since we know that you say “for whom the bell tolls” and “to whom it may concern,” it should follow that we would say “to whomever needs it.” If we test that conclusion by imagining the sentence as a he/him construction—would they “rent it to he” or
“rent it to him”?—we are bound to plump for whom. But we would be wrong. The difficulty is that the relative pronoun is the subject of the verb needs and not the object of the preposition to. The sentence in effect is saying, “They rent it to any person who needs it.”

Similarly, whomever would be wrong in these two sentences: “We must offer it to whoever applies first”; “Give it to whoever wants it.” Again, in effect they are saying, “We must offer it to the person who applies first” and “Give it to the person who wants it.” Such constructions usually involve a choice between whoever and whomever (as opposed to a simple who and whom), which should always alert you to proceed with caution, but they need not. An exception—and a rather tricky one—is seen here: “The disputants differed diametrically as to who they thought might turn out to be the violator” (cited by Bernstein). The sentence is actually saying, “The disputants differed diametrically as to the identity of the person who, they thought, might turn out to be the violator.”

Most sentences, it must be said, are much more straightforward than this, and by performing a few verbal gymnastics you can usually decide with some confidence which case to use. But is it worth the bother? Bernstein, in his later years, thought not. In 1975, he wrote to twenty-five authorities on usage asking if they thought there was any real point in preserving whom except when it is directly governed by a preposition (as in “to whom it may concern”). Six voted to preserve whom, four were undecided, and fifteen thought it should be abandoned.

English has been shedding its pronoun declensions for hundreds of years; today who is the only relative pronoun that is still declinable. Preserving the distinction between who and whom does nothing to promote clarity or reduce ambiguity. It has become merely a source of frequent errors and perpetual uncertainty. Authorities have been tossing stones at whom for at least two hundred years—Noah Webster was one of the first to call it needless—but the word refuses to go away. A century from now it may be a relic, but for the moment you ignore it at the risk of being thought unrefined. And there is, in my view, a certain elegance in seeing a tricky whom properly applied. I for one would not like to see it go.

whodunit is the usual spelling for a mystery story. Note the single n.
whose. Two small problems here. One is the persistent belief that whose can apply only to people. The authorities appear to be unanimous that there is nothing wrong with saying, “The book, a picaresque novel whose central characters are . . .” rather than the clumsier “a picaresque novel the central characters of which are . . .”

The second problem arises from a failure to discriminate between restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses (discussed under that, which). Consider: “Many parents, whose children ride motorbikes, live in constant fear of an accident” (Observer). By making the subordinate clause parenthetical (i.e., setting it off with commas), the writer is effectively saying, “Many parents live in constant fear of an accident, and by the way, their children ride motorbikes.” The writer meant, of course, that the parents live in fear because their children ride motorbikes; that notion is not incidental to the full thought. Thus the clause is restrictive and the commas should be removed. Gowers cites this example from a wartime training manual: “Pilots, whose minds are dull, do not usually live long.” Removing the commas would convert a sweeping insult into sound advice.

The same problem often happens with who, as in this sentence from my old stylebook at The Times: “Normalcy should be left to the Americans who coined it.” Had the writer meant that normalcy should be left only to those Americans who participated in its coining, the absence of a comma would be correct. However, we must assume he meant that it should be left to all Americans, who as a nation, and as an incidental matter, coined it. A comma is therefore required. (In fact we didn’t coin the word. It is several hundred years older than the United States and belongs to the English, who coined it. See NORMALCY.)

widow, when combined with “the late,” is always redundant, as here: “Mrs. Sadat, the widow of the late Egyptian President . . .” (Guardian). Make it either “wife of the late Egyptian President” or “widow of the Egyptian President.”

will, would. “The plan would be phased in over 10 years and will involve extra national insurance contributions” (Times). The problem here is an inconsistency between what grammarians call the protasis (the condition) and the apodosis (the consequence). The sentence has begun in the subjunctive (would) and switched abruptly to the indicative (will). The same error occurs here: “The rector, Chad Varah, has promised that work on the church will start in the New Year and
would be completed within about three years” (Evening Standard). In both sentences it should be either will both times or would both times.

This is not simply a matter of grammatical orderliness. It is a question of clarity—of telling the difference between what may happen and what will happen. If you write, “The plan will cost $400 million,” you are expressing a certainty. The plan either has been adopted or is certain to be adopted. If you write, “The plan would cost $400 million,” the statement is clearly suppositional. It is saying only that if the plan were adopted, it would cost $400 million.

For additional problems with will, see SHALL, WILL.

Wilshire Boulevard for the street in Los Angeles. Not Wilt-.

wistaria, wisteria. The plant was named for an anatomist named Caspar Wistar, and some authorities therefore insist on the spelling wistaria. However, almost no dictionary supports this position, and the formal genus spelling of the plant is Wisteria. Finally, but not least, Wistar sometimes spelled his name Wister.

withhold, withheld. Note -hh-.

wondrous. Not -erous.

Woolloomooloo for the euphonious district of Sydney, Australia. Note the single l at the end.

World Bank. Officially it is the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, but this title is rarely used, even on first reference.

World Court. Officially it is the International Court of Justice, and that title should generally be used on first reference or soon thereafter. See also INTERNATIONAL COURTS.


would like. “I would have liked to have seen it” is a common construction and may be excused in conversation, but in writing it should be “I would like to have seen it” or “I would have liked to see it.”
**wound, scar.** The two are not as interchangeable as writers sometimes casually make them. A scar is what remains after a wound heals. Thus it is always wrong, or at least stretching matters, to talk about a scar healing, including in figurative senses.

**wunderkind, not wonder-, for a prodigy.**
A common error concerning the word *year* is seen here: “The car that crossed the Channel, survived hippiedom, and outlasted a million careful owners has reached its fiftieth year” (*Sunday Times*). The article, about the Citroën Deux Chevaux, was written on the occasion of the car’s fiftieth anniversary; it had therefore reached its fifty-first year. As a moment’s thought will confirm, you are always one year ahead of your age in the sense of what year you are in: a newborn infant is in her first year; after her birthday, she will be in her second year, and so on. The sentence should have said either that the car had completed its fiftieth year or that it had reached its fifty-first.

“In 1865 an influential book by Stanley Jevons argued . . . that Britain would run out of coal in a few years’ time” (*Economist*). The author is to be commended for putting an apostrophe on *years*, but the effort was unnecessary, as pairing *time* with *years* is inescapably repetitious. “In a few years” says as much and gets there quicker.

Writers are often at a loss when deciding what to do with a *yes* or *no* in constructions such as the following: “Will this really be the last of Inspector Clouseau? Blake Edwards says No” (*Sunday Express*). There are two possibilities, neither of which this writer has used. You may make it “Blake Edwards says no” or you may make it “Blake Edwards says, ‘No.’ ” Capitalizing the word without providing any punctuation is a pointless compromise and should satisfy no one.

Anyone not acquainted with journalists could be forgiven for assuming that they must talk something like this: “I last night went to bed early because I this morning had to catch an early flight.” That, at any rate, is how many of them write. Consider: “The announcement was yesterday greeted with restrained enthusiasm in Jeddah” (*New York Times*); “Police were last night hunting for . . .” (*Daily Mail*); “The two sides were today to consider . . .”
(Guardian). Although in newspapers care must be taken not to place the time element where it might produce ambiguity, a more natural arrangement can almost always be found: “was greeted yesterday”; “were hunting last night for”; “were to consider today.”

**you who is.** You is an odd word in that it is frequently used in a singular sense but always attached to a plural verb, which is why we write, “You are a nice person” and not “You is a nice person.” Most of the time this causes no problem, but just occasionally even the most careful user may be brought up short by the inherent inconsistency between the singular pronoun and plural verb, as here: “If you happen to be driving on a Nevada highway and a cow steps into your path, totaling your vehicle and sending you to the hospital, it will be you who is liable to the rancher for the cost” (New Yorker). Odd as “you who is” may sound, it is indeed correct. (For a discussion of the grammar involved, see I, ME.) However, such constructions are also often—as in the example—at least a touch awkward. Almost always grammar can be preserved and sentence flow improved by getting rid of the *it* and recasting accordingly, e.g., “you may be held liable” or “legal liability will rest with you.” See also **it**.
**zoom.** Strictly speaking, the word should describe only a steep upward movement. Almost every authority stresses the point, though how much that is inspired by a desire for precision and how much by the need to find something—anything—to discuss under the letter z is not easy to say. No one, I think, would argue that zoom lenses should be used only for taking pictures of objects above oneself, nor should the word be considered objectionable when applied to lateral movements (“The cars zoomed around the track”). But for describing downward movements (“The planes zoomed down on the city to drop their bombs”) it is perhaps better avoided, especially as *swoop* is available.
The uses of punctuation marks are so numerous and the abuses so varied that the following is offered only as a very general guide to the most common errors. For those who wish to dig more deeply, I recommend the excellent *Mind the Stop*, by G. V. Carey.

**apostrophe.** The principal functions of the apostrophe are to indicate omitted letters (*don’t*, *can’t*, *wouldn’t*) and to show the possessive (strictly, the genitive) case (*John’s book, the bank’s money, the people’s choice*).

Two types of error occur with some frequency and are worth noting. They involve:

1. *Multiple possessives.* This problem can be seen here: “This is a sequel to Jeremy Paul’s and Alan Gibson’s play” (*Times*). The question is whether both of the apostrophes are necessary, and the answer in this instance is no. Because the reference is to a single play written jointly, only the second-named man needs to be in the possessive. Thus it should be “Jeremy Paul and Alan Gibson’s play.” If the reference were to two or more plays written separately, both names would have to carry apostrophes. The rule is that when possession is held in common, only the nearer antecedent should be possessive; when possession is separate, each antecedent must be in the possessive.

2. *Plural units of measure.* Many writers who would never think of omitting the apostrophes in “a fair day’s pay for a fair day’s work” often do exactly that when the unit of measure is increased. Consider: “Laker gets further thirty days
credit” (*Times* headline); “Mr. Taranto, who had nineteen years service with the company . . .” (*New York Times*). Both *days* and *years* should carry an apostrophe. Alternatively we could insert an *of* after the time elements (“thirty days of credit,” “nineteen years of service”). One or the other is necessary.

The problem is often aggravated by the inclusion of unnecessary words, as in each of these examples: “The scheme could well be appropriate in twenty-five years time, he said” (*Times*); “Many diplomats are anxious to settle the job by the end of the session in two weeks time” (*Observer*); “The government is prepared to part with several hundred acres worth of property” (*Time* magazine). Each requires an apostrophe. But that need could be obviated by excluding the superfluous wordage. What is “in twenty-five years’ time” if not “in twenty-five years”? What does “several hundred acres’ worth of property” say that “several hundred acres” does not?

**colon.** The colon marks a formal introduction or indicates the start of a series. A colon should not separate a verb from its object in simple enumerations. Thus it would be wrong to say, “The four states bordering Texas are: New Mexico, Arkansas, Oklahoma, and Louisiana.” The colon should be removed. But it would be correct to say, “Texas is bordered by four states: New Mexico, Arkansas, Oklahoma, and Louisiana.”

**comma.** The trend these days is to use the comma as sparingly as form and clarity allow. But there are certain instances in which it should appear but all too often does not. Equally, it has a tendency to crop up with alarming regularity in places where it has no business. It is, in short, the most abused of punctuation marks and one of the worst offenders of any kind in the English language. Essentially the comma’s use is compulsory in three situations and recommended in a fourth.

1. *When the information provided is clearly parenthetical.* Consider these two sentences, both of which are correctly punctuated: “Mr. Lawson, the energy secretary, was unavailable for comment”; “The ambassador, who arrived in Britain two days ago, yesterday met with the Prime Minister.” In both sentences, the information between the commas is incidental to the main thought. You could remove it and the sentence would still make sense. In the following examples, the writer has failed to set off the parenthetical information. I have provided slashes (the proper name, incidentally, is virgules) to show where the
commas should have gone: “British cars/says a survey/are more reliable than their foreign counterparts” (editorial in the \textit{Evening Standard}); “Operating mainly from the presidential palace at Baabda/southeast of Beirut, Habib negotiated over a sixty-five-day period” \textit{(Time} magazine); “Mary Chatillon, director of the Massachusetts General Hospital’s Reading Language Disorder Unit/maintains: ‘It would simply appear to be . . .’” \textit{(Time} magazine). It should perhaps be noted that failure to put in a comma is particularly common after a parenthesis, as here: “Mr. James Grant, executive director of the United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF)/says . . .” \textit{(Times)}.

Occasionally the writer recognizes that the sentence contains a parenthetical thought but fails to discern just how much of the information is incidental, as here: “At nine she won a scholarship to Millfield, the private school, for bright children of the rich” \textit{(Evening Standard)}. If we removed what has been presented as parenthetical, the sentence would say: “At nine she won a scholarship to Millfield for bright children.” There should be no comma after \textit{school}, because the whole of the last statement is parenthetical.

A rarer error is seen here: “But its big worry is the growing evidence that such ostentatious cars, the cheapest costs £55,240, are becoming socially unacceptable” \textit{(Times)}. When the incidental information could stand alone as a sentence, it needs to be set off with stronger punctuation—either dashes or parentheses.

2. \textit{When the information is nonrestrictive}. The problem here—which is really much the same as that discussed in the previous three paragraphs—is illustrated by this incorrectly punctuated sentence from the \textit{Daily Mail}: “Cable TV would be socially divisive, the chairman of the BBC George Howard claimed last night.” The writer has failed to understand the distinction between (1) “BBC chairman George Howard claimed last night” and (2) “The chairman of the BBC, George Howard, claimed last night.” In (1), the name George Howard is essential to the sense of the sentence; it defines it. If we removed it, the sentence would say, “BBC chairman claimed last night.” In (2), however, the name is nonrestrictive. In effect it is parenthetical. We could remove it without altering the sense of the sentence: “The chairman of the BBC claimed last night.” When a name or title can be removed, it should be set off with commas. When it cannot be removed, the use of commas is wrong.
Two hypothetical examples may help to clarify the distinction. Both are correctly punctuated. “John Fowles’s novel *The Collector* was a bestseller”; “John Fowles’s first novel, *The Collector*, was a bestseller.” In the first example the name of the novel is restrictive because *The Collector* is only one of several novels by Fowles. In the second example it is nonrestrictive because only one novel can be the author’s first one. We could delete *The Collector* from the second example without spoiling the sense of the sentence, but not from the first.

When something is the only one of its kind, it should be set off with commas; when it is only one of several, the use of commas is wrong. Thus these two sentences, both from *The Times*, are incorrect: “When the well-known British firm, Imperial Metal Industries, developed two new types of superconducting wires . . .”; “The writer in the American magazine, *Horizon*, was aware of this pretentiousness . . .” The first example would be correct only if Imperial Metal Industries were the only well-known British firm, and the second would be correct only if *Horizon* were America’s only magazine. The same error in reverse occurs here: “Julie Christie knows that in the week her new film *The Return of the Soldier* has opened . . .” (*Sunday Times*). Since *The Return of the Soldier* was Julie Christie’s only new film of the week, it should have been set off with commas.

The error frequently occurs when a marriage partner is named: “Mrs. Thatcher and her husband Denis left London yesterday” (*Observer*). Since Mrs. Thatcher has only one husband, it should be “and her husband, Denis, left London yesterday.”

3. *With forms of address.* When addressing people, you must use commas around the names or titles of those addressed. “Hit him Jim, hit him” (*Sunday Times*) should be “Hit him, Jim, hit him.” The television program *Good Morning America* should really be *Good Morning, America*. The film *I’m All Right Jack* should have been *I’m All Right, Jack*. The lack of a comma or commas is always sloppy and occasionally ambiguous. In 1981, for instance, the *Sunday Express* illustrated a novel serialization with the heading “I’m choking Mr. Herriot” when what it meant was “I’m choking, Mr. Herriot”—quite another matter.

4. *With interpolated words or phrases.* Words such as moreover, meanwhile, and nevertheless and phrases such as for instance and for example traditionally have taken commas, but the practice has become increasingly discretionary over
the years. In Britain they have been more freely abandoned than in America; Fowler, for instance, seldom uses them. I would recommend using them when they suggest a pause or when ambiguity might result. This is especially true of *however*. Consider these two sentences: “However hard he tried, he failed”; “However, he tried hard, but failed.” To keep from confusing the reader, if only momentarily, it is a good idea to set off *however* with commas when it is used as an interpolation. Much the same could be said of *say*: “She should choose a British government stock with [], say [], five years to run” (*Daily Mail*).

**dash.** Dashes should be used in pairs to enclose parenthetical matter or singly to indicate a sharp break in a sentence (“I can’t see a damn thing in here—ouch!”) or to place emphasis on a point (“There are only two things we can count on—death and taxes”). Dashes are most effective when used sparingly, and there should never be more than one pair in a single sentence.

There are two common errors with dashes:

1. Failing to mark the end of a parenthetical comment with a second dash: “The group—it is the largest in its sector, with subsidiaries or associates in eleven countries, says trading has improved in the current year” (*Times*). Make it “countries—says.”

2. Allowing a word or phrase from the main part of the sentence to become locked within the parenthetical area, as here: “There is another institution which appears to have an even more—shall we say, relaxed—attitude to security” (*Times*). Removing the words between the dashes would give us an institution with “an even more attitude.” *Relaxed* belongs to the sentence proper and needs to be put outside the dashes: “There is another institution which appears to have an even more—shall we say?—relaxed attitude to security.” See also PARENTHESES.

**ellipses.** An ellipsis (sometimes called an ellipse) is used to indicate that material has been omitted. It consists of three periods ( . . . ) and not, as some writers think, a random scattering of them. When an ellipsis occurs at the end of a sentence, a fourth period is often added.

**exclamation marks** are used to show strong emotion (“Get out!”) or urgency (“Help me!”). They should almost never be used for giving emphasis to a simple
statement of fact: “It was bound to happen sometime! A bull got into a china shop here” (cited by Bernstein).

**hyphen.** Almost nothing can be said with finality about the hyphen. As Fowler says, “its infinite variety defies description.” Even the word for using a hyphen is contentious: some authorities hyphenate words, but others hyphen them. The principal function of the hyphen is to reduce the chances of ambiguity. Consider, for instance, the distinction between “the twenty-odd members of his Cabinet” and “the twenty odd members of his Cabinet.” It is sometimes used to indicate pronunciation (de-ice), but not always (coalesce, reissue). Composite adjectives used before a noun are usually given hyphens (“a six-foot-high wall,” “a four-inch rainfall”), but again, not always. Fowler cites “a balance-of-payments deficit” and Gowers “a first-class ticket,” but in expressions such as these, where the words are frequently linked, the hyphens are no more necessary than they would be in “a real estate transaction” or “a post-office strike.” When the phrases are used adverbially, the use of hyphens is wrong, as here: “Mr. Conran, who will be fifty-years-old next month . . .” *(Sunday Times)*. Mr. Conran will be fifty years old next month; he will then be a fifty-year-old man.

In general, hyphens should be dispensed with when they are not necessary. One place where they are not required by sense but frequently occur anyway is with -ly adverbs, as in newly-elected and widely-held. Almost every authority suggests that they should be deleted in such constructions.

**parentheses.** Parenthetical matter can be thought of as any information so incidental to the main thought that it needs to be separated from the sentence that contains it. It can be set off with dashes, brackets (usually reserved for explanatory insertions in quotations), commas, or, of course, parentheses. It is, in short, an insertion and has no grammatical effect on the sentence in which it appears. It is rather as if the sentence does not even know it is there. Thus this statement from *The Times* is incorrect: “But that is not how Mrs. Graham (and her father before her) have made a success of the Washington Post.” The verb should be has.

While the parenthetical expression has no grammatical effect on the sentence in which it appears, the sentence does influence the parentheses. Consider this extract from the *Los Angeles Times* (which, although it uses dashes, could equally have employed parentheses): “One reason for the dearth of Japanese-
American politicians is that no Japanese immigrants were allowed to become citizens—and thus could not vote—until 1952.” As written the sentence is telling us that “no Japanese citizens could not vote.” Delete could not.

When a parenthetical comment is part of a larger sentence, the period should appear after the second parenthesis (as here). (But when the entire sentence is parenthetical, as here, the period should appear inside the final parenthesis.)

**period** (British, Full stop). Two common errors are associated with the period, both of which arise from its absence. The first is the run-on sentence—that is, the linking of two complete thoughts by a comma. It is never possible to say whether a run-on sentence is attributable to ignorance on the part of the writer or to whimsy on the part of the typesetter, but the error occurs frequently enough that ignorance must play a part. In each of the following I have indicated with a slash where one sentence should end and the next should begin: “Although GEC handled the initial contract, much of the equipment is American,/the computers and laser printers come from Hewlett Packard” (Guardian); “Confidence is growing that OPEC will resolve its crisis,/however the Treasury is drawing up contingency plans” (Times); “Funds received in this way go towards the cost of electricity and water supply,/industries, shops and communes pay higher rates” (Times).

The second lapse arises when a writer tries to say too much in a single sentence, as here: “The measures would include plans to boost investment for self-financing in industry, coupled with schemes to promote investment and saving, alleviate youth unemployment, fight inflation, and lower budget deficits, as well as a new look at the controversial issue of reducing working hours” (Times). If the writer has not lost his readers, he has certainly lost himself. The last lumbering flourish (“as well as a new look . . .” ) is grammatically unconnected to what has gone before; it just hangs there. The sentence is crying out for a period—almost anywhere would do—to give the reader a chance to absorb the wealth of information being provided.

Here is another in which the writer tells us everything but his phone number: “But after they had rejected once more the umpires’ proposals of $5,000 a man for the playoffs and $10,000 for the World Series on a three-year contract and the umpires had turned down a proposal of $3,000 for the playoffs and $7,000 for the World Series on a one-year contract, baseball leaders said the playoffs
would begin today and they had umpires to man the games” (*New York Times*).

There is no quota on periods. When an idea is complicated, break it up and present it in digestible chunks. One idea to a sentence is still the best advice that anyone has ever given on writing.

**question mark.** The question mark comes at the end of a question. That sounds simple enough, doesn’t it? But it’s astonishing how frequently writers fail to include it. Two random examples: “‘Why travel all the way there when you could watch the whole thing at home,’ he asked” (*Times*); “The inspector got up to go and stood on Mr. Ellis’s cat, killing it. ‘What else do you expect from these people,’ said the artist” (*Standard*).

Occasionally question marks are included when they are not called for, as in this sentence by Trollope, cited by Fowler: “But let me ask of her enemies whether it is not as good a method as any other known to be extant?” The problem here is a failure to distinguish between a direct question and an indirect one. Direct questions always take question marks: “Who is going with you?” Indirect questions never do: “I would like to know who is going with you.”

When direct questions take on the tone of a command, the use of a question mark becomes more discretionary. “Will everyone please assemble in my office at four o’clock?” is strictly correct, but not all authorities insist on the question mark there.

A less frequent problem arises when a direct question appears outside a direct quotation. Fieldhouse, in *Everyman’s Good English Guide*, suggests that the following punctuation is correct: “Why does this happen to us, we wonder?” The Fowler brothers, however, call this an amusing blunder; certainly it is extremely irregular. The more usual course is to attach the question mark directly to the question. Thus: “Why does this happen to us? we wonder.” But such constructions are clumsy and are almost always improved by being turned into indirect questions: “We wonder why this happens to us.”

**quotation marks (inverted commas).** An issue that arises frequently in Britain but almost never in America is whether to put periods and other punctuation inside or outside quotation marks when they appear together. The practice that prevails in America and is increasingly common in Britain is to put the
punctuation inside the quotes. Thus, “He said, ‘I will not go.’” But some publishers prefer the punctuation to fall outside except when it is part of the quotation. Thus the example above would be “He said, ‘I will not go’.”

When quotation marks are used to set off a complete statement, the first word of the quotation should be capitalized (“He said, ‘Victory is ours’”) except when the quotation is preceded by that (“He said that ‘victory is ours’”). Fowler believed that no punctuation was necessary to set off attributive quotations; he would, for instance, delete the commas from the following: “Tomorrow,” he said, “is a new day.” His argument was that commas are not needed to mark the interruption or introduction of a quotation because the quotation marks already do that. Logically he is correct. But with equal logic we could argue that question marks should be dispensed with on the grounds that the context almost always makes it clear that a question is being asked. The commas are required not by logic but by convention.

**semicolon.** The semicolon is heavier than the comma but lighter than the period. Its principal function is to divide contact clauses—that is, two ideas that are linked by sense but that lack a conjunction. For instance, “You take the high road; I’ll take the low road.” Equally that could be made into two complete sentences or, by introducing a conjunction, into one (“You take the high road and I’ll take the low road”). The semicolon is also sometimes used to separate long coordinate clauses. In this role it was formerly used much more extensively than it is today.
Throughout the text I have in general referred to the following books by the surname of the author, ignoring the contributions of those who revised the originals. Thus although Sir Ernest Gowers substantially revised *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage* in 1965, that book is referred to throughout the text as “Fowler.” References to “Gowers” are meant to suggest Gowers’s own book, *The Complete Plain Words*.


Words Fail Me, Oxford University Press, New York, 1981.


Michaels, Leonard, and Ricks, Christopher (ed.), The State of the Language,


Grammatical terms are, to quote Frank Palmer, “largely notional and often extremely vague.” In “I went swimming,” for instance, *swimming* is a present participle; but in “Swimming is good for you,” it is a gerund. Because such distinctions are for many of us a source of continuing perplexity, I have tried to use most such terms sparingly throughout the book. Inevitably, however, they do sometimes appear, and the following is offered as a simple guide for those who are confused or need refreshing. For a fuller discussion, I recommend *A Dictionary of Contemporary American Usage* by Bergen and Cornelia Evans and *A Concise Dictionary of Correct English* by B. A. Phythian.

**adjective.** A word that qualifies a noun or pronoun: “a brick house,” “a small boy,” “a blue dress.” Most adjectives have three forms: the positive (*big*), the comparative (*bigger*), and the superlative (*biggest*). Although adjectives are usually easy to recognize when they stand before a noun, they are not always so easily discerned when they appear elsewhere in a sentence, as here: “He was deaf”; “I’m glad to be alive”; “She’s awake now.” Adjectives sometimes function as nouns (the *old*, the *poor*, the *sick*, the *insane*) and sometimes as adverbs (a *bitter* cold night, a *quick*-witted man). The distinction between an adjective and an adverb is often very fine. In “a great book,” *great* is an adjective, but in “a great many books,” it is an adverb.

**adverb.** A word that qualifies (or describes) any word other than a noun. That may seem a loose definition, but, as Palmer says, the classification is “quite clearly a ‘ragbag’ or ‘dustbin,’ the category into which words that do not seem to belong elsewhere are placed.” In general, adverbs qualify verbs (*badly* played), adjectives (*too* loud), or other adverbs (*very* quickly). As with adjectives, they have the three forms of positive, comparative, and superlative (seen respectively
in *long, longer, longest*). A common misconception is the belief that words that end in *-ly* are always adverbs. *Kindly, sickly, masterly,* and *deadly,* for example, are usually adjectives.

**case.** The term describes relationships or syntactic functions between parts of speech. A pronoun is in the nominative case (sometimes called the subjective) when it is the subject of a verb (“He is here”) and in the accusative (sometimes called the objective) when it is the object of a verb or preposition (“Give it to him”). Except for six pairs of pronouns (*I/me, he/him, she/her, they/them, we/us,* and *who/whom*) and the genitive (which see), English has shed all its case forms.

**clause.** A group of words that contains a true verb (i.e., a verb functioning as such) and subject. The sentence “The house, which was built in 1920, was white” contains two clauses: “The house was white” and “which was built in 1920.” The first, which would stand on its own, is called a main or principal or independent clause. The second, which would not stand on its own, is called a dependent or subordinate clause. Sometimes the subject is suppressed in main clauses, as here: “He got up and went downstairs.” Although “and went downstairs” would not stand on its own, it is a main clause because the subject has been suppressed. In effect the sentence is saying, “He got up and he went downstairs.” See also PHRASE.

**complement.** A word or group of words that completes a predicate construction—that is, that provides full sense to the meaning of the verb. In “He is a rascal,” *rascal* is the complement of the verb *is.

**conjunction.** A word that links grammatical equivalents, as in “The President and Prime Minister conferred for two hours” (the conjunction *and* links two nouns) and “She came yesterday, but she didn’t stay long” (the conjunction *but* links two clauses).

**genitive.** A noun or pronoun is in the genitive case when it expresses possession (*my house, his car, Sally’s job*). Although some authorities make very small distinctions between genitives and possessives, many others do not. In this book, I have used the term *possessives* throughout.

**gerund.** A verb made to function as a noun, as with the italicized words here. “Seeing is believing”; “Cooking is an art”; “Walking is good exercise.” Gerunds
always end in -\textit{ing}.

\textbf{infinitive.} The term describes verbs that are in the infinite mood (that is, that do not have a subject). Put another way, it is a verb form that indicates the action of the verb without inflection to indicate person, number, or tense. There are two forms of infinitive: the full (\textit{to go}, \textit{to see}) and bare (\textit{go}, \textit{see}), often called simply “an infinitive without to.”

\textbf{mood.} Verbs have four moods:

1. The indicative, which is used to state facts or ask questions (I \emph{am} going; What time \emph{is} it?).

2. The imperative, which indicates commands (\textit{Come} here; \textit{Leave} me alone).

3. The infinite, which makes general statements and has no subject (\textit{To know} her \emph{is} to \emph{love} her).

4. The subjunctive, which is principally used to indicate hypotheses or suppositions (If I \emph{were} you . . . ). The uses of the subjunctive are discussed more fully in the body of the book.

\textbf{noun} is usually defined as a word that describes a person, place, thing, or quality. Such a definition, as many authorities have noted, is technically inadequate. Most of us would not think of \textit{hope}, \textit{despair}, and \textit{exultation} as things, yet they are nouns. And most of the words that describe qualities—\textit{good}, \textit{bad}, \textit{happy}, and the like—are not nouns but adjectives. Palmer notes that there is no difference whatever in sense between “He suffered terribly” and “His suffering was terrible,” yet \textit{suffered} is a verb and \textit{suffering} a noun. There is, in short, no definition for \textit{noun} that isn’t circular, though happily for most of us, it is one part of speech that is almost always instantly recognizable.

\textbf{object.} Whereas the subject of a sentence tells you who or what is performing an action, the object tells you on whom or on what the action is being performed. In “I like you,” \textit{you} is the object of the verb \textit{like}. In “They have now built most of the house,” \textit{most of the house} is the object of the verb \textit{built}. Sometimes sentences have direct and indirect objects, as here: “Please send me four tickets”; “I’ll give the dog a bath” (cited by Phythian). The direct objects are \textit{four tickets}
and a bath. The indirect objects are me and the dog. Prepositions also have objects. In the sentence “Give it to him,” him is the object of the preposition to.

**participle.** The participle is a verbal adjective. There are two kinds: present participles, which end in -ing (walking, looking), and past participles, which end in -d (heard), -ed (learned), -n (broken), or -t (bent). The terms present participle and past participle can be misleading because present participles are often used in past-tense senses (“They were looking for the money”) and past participles are often used when the sense is the present or future (“She has broken it”; “Things have never looked better”). When present-tense participles are used as nouns, they are called gerunds.

**phrase.** A group of words that does not have a subject and verb. “I will come sometime soon” consists of a clause (I will come) and a phrase (sometime soon). Phrases always express incomplete thoughts.

**predicate.** Everything in a sentence that is not part of the subject (i.e., the verb, its qualifiers and complements) is called the predicate. In “The man went to town after work,” The man is the subject and the rest of the sentence is the predicate. The verb alone is sometimes called the simple predicate.

**preposition.** A word that connects and specifies the relationship between a noun or noun equivalent and a verb, adjective, or other noun or noun equivalent. In “We climbed over the fence,” the preposition over connects the verb climbed with the noun fence. Whether a word is a preposition or a conjunction in often a matter of function. In “The army attacked before the enemy was awake,” before is a conjunction. But in “The army attacked before dawn,” before is a preposition. The distinction is that in the first sentence before is followed by a verb, whereas in the second it is not.

**pronoun.** A word used in place of a noun or nouns. In “I like walking and reading; such are my pleasures,” such is a pronoun standing for reading and walking. Pronouns have been variously grouped by different authorities. Among the more common groupings are personal pronouns (I, me, his, etc.), relative pronouns (who, whom, that, which), demonstrative pronouns (this, that, these, those), and indefinite pronouns (some, several, either, neither, etc.).

**subject.** The word or phrase in a sentence or clause that indicates who or what
is performing the action. In “I see you,” the subject is I. In “Climbing steep hills tires me,” *Climbing steep hills* is the subject.

**substantive.** A word or group of words that performs the function of a noun. In “Swimming is good for you,” *Swimming* is a substantive as well as a gerund.

**verb.** Verbs can be defined generally (if a bit loosely) as words that have tense and that denote what someone or something is or does. Verbs that have an object are called transitive verbs—that is, the verb transmits the action from subject to an object, as in “He put the book on the table.” Verbs that do not have an object are called intransitive verbs, as in “She slept all night”; in these the action is confined to the subject.

When it is necessary to indicate more than simple past or present tense, two or more verbs are combined, as in “I have thought about this all week.” Although there is no widely agreed term for such a combination of verbs, I have for convenience followed Fowler in this book and referred to them as compound verbs. The additional or “helping” verb in such constructions (e.g., *have* in the example above) is called an auxiliary.
About the Author

BILL BRYSON is the author of numerous works of travel literature as well as books on language. In addition to his bestselling books for Broadway, including *A Walk in the Woods*, *I’m a Stranger Here Myself*, and *In a Sunburned Country*, he is the author of *Mother Tongue*, *The Lost Continent*, *Notes from a Small Island*, and *Neither Here nor There*. He lives in Hanover, New Hampshire, with his wife, Cynthia, and their children.
By Bill Bryson

The Lost Continent
Mother Tongue
Neither Here nor There
Made in America
Notes from a Small Island
A Walk in the Woods
I’m a Stranger Here Myself
In a Sunburned Country
*Strictly speaking, only adverbs modify; nouns and adjectives qualify. But because the usage problems are essentially the same for all the parts of speech, I have collected them under the heading by which they are most commonly, if not quite accurately, known.

Return to text.
Go to the Next Page to Read Chapter 7 from
Bill Bryson’s *At Home*

Coming in October 2010
An Excerpt from Bill Bryson’s At Home

THE DRAWING ROOM

I

If you had to summarize it in a sentence, you could say that the history of private life is a history of getting comfortable slowly. Until the eighteenth century, the idea of having comfort at home was so unfamiliar that no word existed for the condition. Comfortable meant merely “capable of being consoled.” Comfort was something you gave to the wounded or distressed. The first person to use the word in its modern sense was the writer Horace Walpole, who remarked in a letter to a friend in 1770 that a certain Mrs. White was looking after him well and making him “as comfortable as is possible.” By the early nineteenth century, everyone was talking about having a comfortable home or enjoying a comfortable living, but before Walpole’s day no one did.

Nowhere in the house is the spirit (if not always the actuality) of comfort better captured than in the curiously
named room in which we find ourselves now, the drawing room. The term is a shortening of the much older withdrawing room, meaning a space where the family could withdraw from the rest of the household for greater privacy, and it has never settled altogether comfortably into widespread English usage. For a time in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, drawing room was challenged in more refined circles by the French salon, which was sometimes anglicized to saloon, but both those words gradually became associated with spaces outside the home, so that saloon came first to signify a room for socializing in a hotel or on a ship, then a place for dedicated drinking, and finally, and a little unexpectedly, a type of automobile. Salon, meanwhile, became indelibly attached to places associated with artistic endeavors before being appropriated (from about 1910) by providers of hair care and beauty treatments. Parlor, the word long favored by Americans for the main room of the home, has a kind of nineteenth-century frontier feel to it, but in fact is the oldest word of all. It was first used in 1225, referring to a room where monks could go to talk (it is from the French parler, “to speak”), and was extended to secular contexts by the last quarter of the following century.

Drawing room is the name used by Edward Tull on his floorplan of the Old Rectory, and almost certainly is the
term employed by the well-bred Mr. Marsham, though he was probably in a minority even then. By mid-century it was being supplanted in all but the most genteel circles by sitting room, a term first appearing in English in 1806. A later challenger was lounge, which originally signified a type of chair or sofa, then a jacket for relaxing in, and finally, from 1881, a room. In America, living room came into being in about 1870, and quite rapidly drove parlor out of use there, but failed to catch on elsewhere.

Assuming he was a conventional sort of fellow, Mr. Marsham would have strived to make his drawing room the most comfortable room in the house, with the softest and finest furnishings. In practice, however, it was probably anything but comfortable for much of the year, since it has just one fireplace, which could do no more than warm a small, central part of the room. Even with a good fire going, I can attest, it is possible in the depths of winter to stand across the room and see your breath.

Though the drawing room became the focus of comfort in the home, the story doesn’t actually start there; it doesn’t start in the house at all. It starts outdoors, a century or so before Mr. Marsham’s birth, with a simple discovery that would make landed families like his very rich and allow him one day to build himself a handsome rectory. The discovery was merely this: land didn’t have
to be rested regularly to retain its fertility. It was not the most staggering of insights, but it changed the world.

Traditionally, most English farmland was divided into long strips called furlongs and each furlong was left fallow for one season in every three—sometimes one season in two—so that it could recover its ability to produce healthy crops.* This meant that in any given year at least one-third of the nation’s farmland stood idle. In consequence, there wasn’t sufficient feed to keep large numbers of animals alive through the winter, so landowners had no choice but to slaughter most of their stock each autumn and face a long, lean period till spring.

Then English farmers discovered something that Dutch farmers had known for a long time: if turnips, clover, or one or two other amenable crops were sown on the idle fields, they miraculously refreshed the soil and produced a bounty of winter fodder into the bargain. It was the infusion of nitrogen that did it, though no one would understand that for nearly two hundred years. What was understood, and very much appreciated, was that crop rotation transformed agricultural fortunes dramatically. Moreover, because more animals lived through the winter, they produced heaps of additional manure, and these glorious, gratis ploppings enriched the soil even further.
It is hard to exaggerate what a miracle all this seemed. Before the eighteenth century, agriculture in Britain lurched from crisis to crisis. An academic named W. G. Hoskins calculated (in 1964) that between 1480 and 1700, one harvest in four was bad, and almost one in five was catastrophically bad. Now, thanks to the simple expedient of crop rotation, agriculture was able to settle into a continuous, more or less reliable prosperity. It was this long golden age that gave so much of the countryside the air of prosperous comeliness it enjoys still today, and allowed the likes of Mr. Marsham to embrace that gratifying new commodity: comfort.

Farmers also benefited from a new wheeled contraption invented in about 1700 by Jethro Tull, a farmer and agricultural thinker in Berkshire. Called a seed drill, it allowed seeds to be planted directly into the soil rather than broadcast by hand. Seed was expensive, and Tull’s new drill reduced the amount needed from three or four bushels per acre to under one; and because the seeds were planted at even depths in neat rows, more of them sprouted successfully, so yields improved dramatically, too, from between twenty and forty bushels an acre to as much as eighty.

The new vitality was also reflected in breeding programs. Nearly all the great cattle breeds—Jersey,
Guernsey, Hereford, Aberdeen Angus, Ayrshire*—were eighteenth-century creations. Sheep likewise were successfully manipulated to become the bundles of unnatural fleeciness we see today. A medieval sheep gave about a pound and a half of wool; re-engineered eighteenth-century sheep gave up to nine pounds. Underneath all that lovely fleece, sheep were gratifyingly plumper, too. Between 1700 and 1800, the average weight of sheep sold at Smithfield Market in London more than doubled, from thirty-eight pounds to eighty. Beef cattle expanded similarly. Dairy yields went up, too.

All this was not without cost, however. To make the new systems of production work, it was necessary to amalgamate small fields into large ones and move the peasant farmers off the land. This enclosure movement, in which small fields that had formerly supported many were converted into much larger enclosed fields that enriched a few, made farming immensely lucrative for those with large holdings—and soon in many areas that was almost the only kind of holding there was. Enclosure had been going on slowly for centuries, but it gathered pace between 1750 and 1830, when some six million acres of British farmland were enclosed. Enclosure was hard on the displaced peasant farmers, but it did leave them and their descendants conveniently available to move to towns and become the toiling masses of the new
Industrial Revolution—which was also just beginning and was funded to a very large extent by the surplus wealth enjoyed by the ever-richer landowners.

Many landowners also discovered that they sat on great seams of coal just at a time when coal was suddenly needed for industry. This didn’t always represent a notable advance in beauty—at one time in the eighteenth century, eighty-five open-cast coal mines could be seen from Chatsworth House, or so it has been said—but it did translate into gratifying heaps of lucre. Still others made money from leasing land to railways or building canals and controlling rights of way. The Duke of Bridgewater earned annual returns of 40 percent—and really returns don’t get much better than that—from a canal monopoly in the West Country. All of this was in an age in which there was no income tax, no capital gains tax, no tax on dividends or interest—almost nothing to disturb the steady flow of money being banked. Many people were born into a world in which they had to do virtually nothing with their wealth but stack it. The third Earl of Burlington, to take one example of many, owned vast estates in Ireland—some forty-two thousand acres in all—and never visited the country. Eventually he was made lord treasurer of Ireland and still never visited it.

This wealthy elite and their offspring covered the
British countryside with stout and rambling expressions of this new *joie de richesse*. By one count, at least 840 large country houses were built in England between 1710 and the end of the century—”dispersed like great rarity plums in a vast pudding of a country,” in the exuberant words of Horace Walpole.

Extraordinary houses need extraordinary people to design and build them, and perhaps none was more extraordinary—or at least more unexpected—than Sir John Vanbrugh (1664–1726).* Vanbrugh came from a large family—he was one of nineteen children—that was well-to-do and of Dutch extraction, though they had been settled in England for nearly half a century by the time Vanbrugh himself was born.

“A most sweet-natur’d gentleman, and pleasant,” wrote the poet Nicholas Rowe of Vanbrugh, who seems to have been well liked by everyone who met him (with the notable exception of the Duchess of Marlborough, as we shall see). A portrait of him by Sir Godfrey Kneller in the National Portrait Gallery in London, made when Vanbrugh was about forty, shows an agreeable man with a pink, well-fed, rather ordinary face framed—indeed, all but overwhelmed—by a periwig of baroque magnificence, as was the fashion of the day.
For the first three decades of his life he displayed no particular sense of direction. He worked in a family wine business, went to India as an agent for the East India Company—then still a fairly new and undistinguished enterprise—and finally took up soldiering, though without much distinction there either. Sent to France, he was arrested as a spy almost as soon as he stepped ashore and spent nearly five years in prison, albeit in reasonable, gentlemanly comfort.

Prison appears to have had a galvanizing effect on him, for upon his return to England he became with remarkable swiftness a celebrated playwright, producing in rapid succession two of the most popular comedies of his day, *The Relapse* and *The Provok’d Wife*. Featuring characters with names like Fondlewife, Lord Foppington, Sir Tunbelly Clumsey, and Sir John Brute, the plays may seem just a touch heavy-handed to us but were the height of drollery in that overdone and highly fragranced age. It was pretty risqué stuff. One scandalized member of the Society for the Reformation of Manners said that Vanbrugh “had debauch’d the stage beyond the looseness of all former times.” Others loved his plays for exactly the same reasons. The poet Samuel Rogers thought him “almost as great a genius as ever lived.”

Altogether Vanbrugh would write or adapt ten works
for the stage, but meanwhile, and with no less startling abruptness, he also turned his talents to architecture. Where this impulse came from was as much a mystery to his contemporaries as it is to us. All that is known is that in 1701, at the age of thirty-five, he began work on one of the grandest houses ever built in England, Castle Howard in Yorkshire. How he persuaded his friend Charles Howard, third Earl of Carlisle—described by one architectural historian as “rather nondescript but obviously uncontrollably wealthy”—to underwrite this seemingly insane ambition is no less uncertain. This was not just a big house, it was a place that was positively and determinedly palatial, built “on a scale previously the prerogative of royalty,” in the words of Vanbrugh’s biographer Kerry Downes. Clearly Carlisle saw something in Vanbrugh’s rough sketches, and Vanbrugh, it must be said, did have the backup of a real architect of undoubted gifts, Nicholas Hawks-moor, who had twenty years of experience but was oddly content to work as Vanbrugh’s assistant. It seems also that Vanbrugh may have worked for free. (No indication of money changing hands has ever been found—and on both sides these were men who kept track of such things.) In any case, Carlisle dismissed the distinguished architect he had been planning to use, William Talman, and gave the novice Vanbrugh free rein.
Vanbrugh and Carlisle were both members of a secretive society known as the Kit-Cat Club, an organization of Whiggish* disposition that had been founded more or less exclusively to ensure the Hanoverian succession—the dynastic change that guaranteed that all future British monarchs would be Protestant even if, in the short term, they were not notably British. That the Kit-Cats achieved this aim was no small accomplishment since their candidate, George I, spoke no English, had almost no admirable qualities, and was by one count no better than fifty-eighth in line to the throne. Beyond this one piece of political maneuvering, the club operated with such discretion that almost nothing is known about it. One of its founding members was a pastry chef named Christopher—or “Kit”—Cat. Kit-cat was also the name of his famous mutton pies, so whether the club was named for him or his pies has been a matter of debate in certain very small circles for three hundred years. The club lasted from only about 1696 to 1720—specific details are unknown—and total membership was only about fifty, of whom two-thirds were peers of the realm. Five members—Lords Carlisle, Halifax, and Scarborough and the Dukes of Manchester and Marlborough—commissioned work from Vanbrugh. Membership also included the prime minister Robert Walpole (father of Horace), the journalists Joseph Addison and Richard Steele, and the playwright William
At Castle Howard, Vanbrugh didn’t exactly ignore the classical proprieties; he just buried them under a kind of kudzu of baroque ornamentation. A Vanbrugh structure is always like no other, but Castle Howard is, as it were, unusually unusual. It had a large number of formal rooms—thirteen on one floor—but few bedrooms: nothing like the amount that would normally be expected. Many rooms were oddly shaped or poorly lit. Much of the external detailing is unusual, if not actually erratic. The columns on one side of the house are simple Doric, but those on the other are a more ornate Corinthian. (Vanbrugh argued, with some logic, that no one could see the two sides at the same time.) The most striking characteristic of all, for at least a quarter century, was that the house was built without its west wing—though this was not in fact Vanbrugh’s fault. Carlisle got distracted and neglected to put up the west wing, leaving the house conspicuously unfinished. When the wing was finally built, twenty-five years later by another party, it was in an entirely different style, so that the visitor today is met with a baroque east wing as Vanbrugh intended and an inescapably unmatching Palladian west wing that pleased a later owner and hardly anyone else.

Castle Howard’s most famous feature, its domed
crown (formally a lantern, from a Greek word meaning “to admit light”) over the entrance hall, was a late addition, and is strikingly out of scale with the building beneath it. It is too tall and too thin. It looks as if it were designed for another structure altogether. One architectural critic noted, diplomatically, that “at close quarters it does not fit very logically on to the building below.” It was at least novel. The only other domed structure in England at the time was Christopher Wren’s new St. Paul’s Cathedral. No house anywhere had ever had anything like it.

Castle Howard is in short a very fine property, but fine in a way that is entirely its own. The dome may be slightly odd, but Castle Howard would be nothing without it. We can say that with unusual confidence because for twenty years Castle Howard was without it. Late on the night of November 9, 1940, a fire was discovered in the east wing. In those days the house had just one telephone, and the phone melted like chocolate before anyone could get to it. So someone had to run to the gatehouse, a mile away, and call the fire department from there. By the time the fire crew arrived from Malton, six miles distant, two hours had passed and much of the house was lost. The dome had crumpled in the heat and fallen into the house. Castle Howard was domeless for the next twenty years, and it looked allright—it was
still stately, still imposing, still stolidly grand—but it had lost its perk. When the dome was finally restored in the early 1960s, it became instantly and peculiarly endearing once again.

Despite his limited experience, Vanbrugh now landed the commission for one of the most important houses ever built in Great Britain, Blenheim Palace, that colossal explosion of magnificence at Woodstock in Oxfordshire. Blenheim was intended to be a gift from the nation to the Duke of Marlborough for his victory over the French in the Battle of Blindheim (somehow anglicized into Blenheim), in Bavaria, in 1704. The estate came with twenty-two thousand acres of prime land, which brought an income of £6,000 a year, a hale sum for the time but not, alas, nearly enough to pay for a house on the scale of Blenheim—and Blenheim was so big as to be effectively off any scale.

It contained three hundred rooms and sprawled over seven acres.* A frontage of 250 feet for a stately home was enormous; at Blenheim the frontage was to be 856 feet. It was the greatest monument to vanity Britain had ever seen. Every inch of it was covered in decorative stony sumptuousness. It was grander than any royal palace and so, not surprisingly, very, very expensive. The duke, a fellow member of the Kit-Cat Club, seems to
have gotten along with Vanbrugh well enough, but, after agreeing the general principles of the thing, he went off to fight more wars, leaving domestic arrangements in the hands of his wife, Sarah, Duchess of Marlborough. She thus oversaw most of the work, and from the start she and Vanbrugh did not get along. At all.

Work began in the summer of 1705 and was trouble from the start. Many costly adjustments had to be made along the way. The principal entrance had to be changed when a cottage owner refused to move, so the main gate had to be located in an odd place at the back of the town, requiring visitors to pass along the high street, turn a corner, and enter the grounds through what even today feels oddly like a tradesman’s entrance (albeit rather a grand one).

Blenheim was budgeted to cost £40,000. Ultimately it cost about £300,000. This was unfortunate, as the Marlboroughs were notoriously parsimonious. The duke was so cheap that he refused to dot his i’s when he wrote, to save on ink. It was never clear who was to pay for the work—Queen Anne, the treasury, or the Marlboroughs themselves. The duchess and Queen Anne had a close, rather strange, and just possibly intimate relationship. When alone they gave each other odd pet names—”Mrs. Morley” and “Mrs. Freeman”—to avoid any
awkwardness arising from the fact that one of them was regal and the other was not. Unfortunately, the building of Blenheim coincided with a cooling of their affections, which added to the uncertainty of financial responsibility. Things grew more complicated still after the queen died in 1714 and was replaced by a king who felt no particular affection for, or debt to, the Marlboroughs. Many of the builders went unpaid for years as the disputes dragged on, and most eventually got only a fraction of what they were owed. Building work ceased altogether for four years, from 1712 to 1716, and many of the unpaid workers were understandably loath to return when work resumed. Vanbrugh himself didn’t get paid until 1725—almost exactly twenty years after work started.

Even when things were moving along, Vanbrugh and the duchess squabbled endlessly. She thought the palace “too big, too dark and too martial.” She accused Vanbrugh of extravagance and insubordination, and became implacably convinced that he was a bad thing. In 1716, she dismissed him altogether—though at the same time instructing the workmen to stay faithful to his plans. When Vanbrugh came with his wife in 1725 to see the finished building—a building on which he had lavished some two-thirds of his architectural career and one-third of his life—he was informed at the gate that the duchess had left standing instructions that he was not to be
admitted to the grounds. So he never saw his finished masterwork except as a shimmer in the distance. Eight months later he was dead.

Like Castle Howard, Blenheim is in a baroque style, but even more so. Its roofline is a festive eruption of orbs and urns and other upright embellishments. Many people hated its monumental scale and ostentation. The Earl of Ailesbury dismissed it as “one mass of stone without taste or relish.” Alexander Pope, after exhaustively enumerating its failings, concluded: “In a word, it is a most expensive absurdity.” The Duke of Shrewsbury dismissed it as “a great quarry of stones above ground.” A wag named Abel Evans wrote a mock epitaph for Vanbrugh:

*Lie heavy on him, earth, for he*

*Laid many a heavy load on thee.*

Blenheim is a gloriously overwrought piece of work without question, but transfixing nonetheless, and the scale is so off the chart that it can hardly fail to awe the first-time visitor. It is hard to believe that anyone would want to live in such an oppressive vastness, and in fact the Marlboroughs barely did. They didn’t move in until 1719, and the duke died just two years later.
Whatever one thought of Vanbrugh and his creations, the age of the celebrity architect had begun.*

Before Vanbrugh’s day, architects weren’t much celebrated. Generally, fame went to those who paid for the houses, not those who designed them. Hardwick Hall, which we encountered in Chapter 3, was one of the great buildings of its age, yet it is merely supposed that Robert Smythson was the architect. It is a pretty good supposition, for all kinds of reasons, but there is no actual proof of it. Smythson was in fact the first man to be called an architect—or nearly to be called an architect—on a monument of about 1588, in which he is described as “architect or and survayor.” But as with so many others of his era, very little is known about his early life, including where he was born and when. He makes his first appearance in the records at Longleat House at Wiltshire in 1568, when he was already in his thirties and a master mason. Where he was before that is completely unknown.

Even after architecture became a recognized profession, most practitioners came from other backgrounds. Inigo Jones was a designer of theatrical productions, Christopher Wren an astronomer, Robert Hooke a scientist, Vanbrugh a soldier and playwright, William Kent a painter and interior designer. As a formal
profession, architecture was actually very late developing. Compulsory examinations were not introduced until 1882 in Britain, and architecture wasn’t offered anywhere as a full-time academic discipline until 1895.

By the mid-eighteenth century, however, domestic architecture was getting a lot of respect and attention, and for a time no one had more of both than Robert Adam. If Vanbrugh was the first celebrity architect, Adam was the greatest. Born in 1728 in Scotland, the son of an architect, he was one of a quartet of brothers who all became successful architects, though Robert was the undoubted genius of the family and the one remembered by history. The period from 1755 to 1785 is sometimes called the Age of Adam.

A painting of Adam in the National Portrait Gallery in London, made in about 1770 when he was in his early forties, shows a kindly looking man in a powdered gray wig, but in fact Adam was not a particularly adorable fellow. Arrogant and egotistical, he treated his employees poorly, paying them little and keeping them in a kind of perpetual servitude. He fined them severely if they were caught doing any work other than for him, even a sketch for their own amusement. Adam’s clients, however, venerated his abilities and for thirty years simply couldn’t
give him enough work. The Adam brothers became a kind of architectural industry. They owned quarries, a timber business, brickworks, a company for making stucco, and much else. At one point they employed two thousand people. They designed not just houses but every object within them—furniture, fireplaces, carpets, beds, lamps, and all else down to incidental objects like doorknobs, bell pulls, and inkstands.

Adam’s designs were intense—sometimes overwhelming—and gradually he fell out of favor. He had an inescapable weakness for overdecoration. To walk into an Adam room is rather like walking into a large, overfrosted cake. Indeed one of his contemporary critics called him “a Pastry Cook.” By the late 1780s, Adam was being denounced as “sugary and effeminate” and had fallen so far out of fashion that he retreated to his native Scotland, where he died in 1792. By 1831, he was so thoroughly forgotten that the influential Lives of the Most Eminent British Architects didn’t mention him at all. The banishment didn’t last terribly long, however. By the 1860s, his reputation was undergoing a revival, which continues now, though these days he is remembered more for his rich interiors than for his architecture.

The one thing all buildings had in common through Adam’s day was a rigorous devotion to symmetry.
Vanbrugh, to be sure, didn’t entirely achieve symmetry at Castle Howard, but that was largely accidental. Elsewhere, however, symmetry was adhered to as an immutable law of design. Every wing had to have a matching wing, whether it was needed or not, and every window and pediment to one side of the main entrance had to be exactly mirrored by windows and pediments on the other side regardless of what went on behind them. The result often was the building of wings that no one really wanted. Not until the nineteenth century did this absurdity begin to end, and it was a remarkable property in Wiltshire—one of the most extraordinary ever built—that started the process.

It was called Fonthill Abbey, and it was the creation of two strange and fascinating men: William Beckford and the architect James Wyatt. Beckford was fabulously rich. His family owned plantations all across Jamaica and had dominated the West Indian sugar trade for a hundred years. Beckford’s doting mother made sure her son enjoyed every advantage in his upbringing. The eight-year-old Wolfgang Mozart was brought in to give him piano lessons. Sir William Chambers, the king’s architect, taught him to draw. Beckford’s wealth was so inexhaustibly great that when he came into his inheritance on his twenty-first birthday, he spent £40,000—an obscenely colossal sum—on the party. Byron in a
poem called him “England’s wealthiest son,” probably rightly.

In 1784, Beckford became the centerpiece of the most spectacularly juicy scandal of his age when it emerged that he was involved in a pair of tempestuous, wildly dangerous dalliances. One was with Louisa Beckford, the wife of his first cousin. At the same time, he also fell for a slim and delicate youth named William Courtenay, the future ninth Earl of Devon, who was generally agreed to be the most beautiful boy in England. For a few torrid and presumably exhausting years, Beckford maintained both relationships, often under the same roof. But in the autumn of 1784 there was a sudden rupture. Beckford received or discovered a note in Courtenay’s hand that threw him into a fit of jealous rage. No record exists of what the note said, but it provoked Beckford into intemperate action. He went to Courtenay’s room and, in the slightly confused words of one of the other houseguests, “horsewhipped him, which created a noise, and the door being opened, Courtenay was discovered in his shirt, and Beckford in some posture or other—Strange story.”

Indeed.

The particular misfortune here was that Courtenay was
the darling of his family—he was the only boy among fourteen siblings—and shockingly youthful. He was sixteen at the time of the incident, but may have been as young as ten when he fell under Beckford’s unwholesome sway. This was not a matter that Courtenay’s family would ever let drop, and we may take it for granted that Beckford’s cuckolded cousin was less than jubilant, too. Disgraced beyond any hope of redemption, Beckford fled to the continent. There he traveled widely and wrote, in French, a gothic novel called *Vathek: An Arabian Tale*, which is virtually unreadable now but was much admired in its day.

Then, in 1796, his disgrace nowhere near over, Beckford did a wholly unexpected thing. He returned to England and announced a plan to tear down the family mansion in Wiltshire, Fonthill Splendens, which was only about forty years old, and build a new house in its place—and not just any house but the largest house in England since Blenheim. It was a strange thing to do, for he had no prospect of ever filling it with company. The architect he selected for this slightly demented exercise was James Wyatt.

Wyatt is a curiously neglected figure. His only substantial biography, by Antony Dale, was published over half a century ago. He would perhaps be more
famous but for the fact that so many of his buildings no longer exist. Today he is remembered more for what he destroyed than what he built.

Born in Staffordshire, the son of a farmer, Wyatt was drawn to architecture as a young man and spent six years in Italy studying architectural drawing. In 1770, aged just twenty-four, he designed the Pantheon, an exhibition hall and assembly room, loosely modeled on the ancient building of the same name in Rome, which occupied a prime site on Oxford Street in London for 160 years. Horace Walpole thought it “the most beautiful edifice in England.” Unfortunately, Marks and Spencer didn’t and in 1931 tore it down to make way for a new store.

Wyatt was an architect of talent and distinction—under George III he was appointed Surveyor of the Office of Works, in effect official architect to the nation—but a perennial shambles as a human being. He was disorganized, forgetful, perpetually dissolute, and famous for his tremendous benders. One year he missed fifty straight weekly meetings at the Office of Works. His supervision of the office was so poor that one man was discovered to have been on holiday for three years. When sober, however, he was much liked and widely praised for his charm, good nature, and architectural vision. A bust of him in the National Portrait Gallery in London
shows him clean shaven (and indeed clean, a slightly unusual condition for him), with a very full head of hair and a face that seems curiously mournful or perhaps just slightly hungover.

Despite his shortcomings, he became the most sought-after architect of his day. However, he took on more commissions than he could manage and seldom gave satisfactory attention to anyone, to the endless exasperation of his clients. “If he can get with a large fire and have a bottle by him, he cares for nothing else,” wrote one of his many frustrated customers.

“There is an overwhelming consensus of opinion,” observed his biographer Dale, “that Wyatt had three outstanding faults: an entire lack of business capability, the complete incapacity for constant or intensive application . . . and utter improvidence.” And these were the words of a sympathetic observer. Wyatt was, in short, feckless and impossible. A client named William Windham stuck it out for eleven years on a job that should have taken a fraction of the time. “A person has some right to feel impatient,” Windham wearily wrote his absent architect at one point, “finding the principal rooms of his house near uninhabitable because he has not been able to obtain from you what would not be the work of a couple of hours.” To be a Wyatt client was to be long-
suffering.

Yet Wyatt’s career was both successful and remarkably productive. Over a span of forty years, he built or refashioned a hundred country houses, extravagantly reworked five cathedrals, and did much to change the face of British architecture—not always, it must be said, for the good. His treatment of cathedrals was particularly rash and sweeping. A critic named John Carter was so exercised by Wyatt’s predilection for ripping out ancient interiors that he dubbed him “the Destroyer” and devoted 212 essays in the Gentleman’s Magazine—essentially his whole career—to attacking Wyatt’s style and character.

At Durham Cathedral, Wyatt had plans to surmount the building with a mighty spire. This never came to pass, which is perhaps no bad thing, for at Fonthill Wyatt would soon show that there were few places more dangerous to be than under a Wyatt tower. He also wished to sweep away the ancient Galilee Chapel, the last resting place of the Venerable Bede and one of the great achievements of English Norman architecture. Happily, that plan was rejected, too.

Beckford was enthralled by Wyatt’s dashing genius but driven to sputtering fury by his unreliability. Still, he
somehow managed to keep the wayward architect focused enough to draw a plan, and work started shortly before the turn of the century.

Everything at Fonthill was designed on a fantastic scale. Windows stood fifty feet high. Staircases were as wide as they were long. The front door rose to a height of thirty feet but was made to seem even taller by Beckford’s practice of employing dwarf doormen. Eighty-foot curtains hung from the four arches in the Octagon, a central chamber from which radiated four long arms. The view down the central corridor stretched for over three hundred feet. The dining room table—Beckford its only occupant night after night—was fifty feet long. Every ceiling was lost in a distant gloom of hammerbeams. Fonthill was very possibly the most exhausting residence ever built—and all for a man who lived alone and was known everywhere as “the man on whom no neighbour would call.” To preserve his privacy, Beckford built a formidable wall, known as the Barrier, around the estate. It was twelve feet high, twelve miles long, and surmounted by iron spikes to deter trespassers.
The Great Western Hall, leading to the Grand Saloon or Octagon, at Fonthill Abbey

Among the additional, incidental planned structures was a mighty tomb, 125 feet long, in which his coffin would be placed on a dais 25 feet above the ground, so
that, he believed, no worms could ever get to him.

Fonthill was deliberately and riotously asymmetrical—"architectural anarchy" in the words of the historian Simon Thurley—and rendered in an ornate Gothic style that made it look like a cross between a medieval cathedral and Dracula’s castle. Wyatt didn’t invent neo-Gothicism. That distinction goes to Horace Walpole for his house Strawberry Hill, in outer London. Gothick, as it was sometimes spelled to distinguish it from the genuine medieval stuff, originally signaled not an architectural style but a type of gloomy, overwrought novel, and Walpole invented that too with The Castle of Otranto in 1764. Strawberry Hill, however, was a fairly cautious, picturesque sort of thing—a more or less conventional house with some Gothic tracery and other embellishments attached. Wyatt’s Gothic creations were vastly darker and heavier. They had looming towers and romantic spires and jumbled rooflines that were studiously asymmetrical, so that they looked as if the whole structure had grown organically over centuries. It was a kind of Hollywood imagining of the past, long before there was a Hollywood. Walpole invented a term, gloomth, to convey the ambience of Gothick; Wyatt’s houses were the very quintessence of gloomth.* They dripped it.
In his obsession to get the project completed Beckford kept up to five hundred men working round the clock, but things constantly went wrong. Fonthill’s tower, rising to a height of 280 feet, was the tallest ever put on a private house, and it was a nightmare. Rashly, Wyatt used a new kind of rendering called Parker’s Roman cement, invented by a Reverend James Parker of Gravesend, yet another of that inquisitive breed of clergymen whom we encountered at the outset of the book. What impulse brought the Reverend Mr. Parker to the world of building materials is unknown, but his idea was to produce a quick-drying cement of the type once used by the Romans, from a recipe since lost. Unfortunately, his cement had little inherent strength and, if not mixed exactly correctly, tended to fall apart in chunks—as it did now at Fonthill. Appalled, Beckford found his mighty abbey coming to pieces even as it went up. Twice it collapsed during construction. Even when fully erect, it creaked and groaned ominously.

To Beckford’s boundless exasperation, Wyatt was often either away drunk or working on other projects. Just as things were literally falling apart at Fonthill and the five hundred workers were either running for their lives or twiddling their thumbs awaiting instructions, Wyatt was engaged in a massive, abortive project to build King George III a new palace at Kew. Why George III wanted
a new palace at Kew is a reasonable question, as he had a very good one there already, but Wyatt went ahead and designed a formidable edifice (nicknamed “the Bastille” because of its forbidding looks), one of the first buildings anywhere to use cast iron as a structural material.

We don’t know what the new palace looked like, because no reproduction of it exists, but it must have been something. It was made completely of cast iron except for doors and floorboards—a design that would have given it all the charm and comfort of a cooking pot. Unfortunately, as the building rose beside the Thames, the king began to lose his sight and his interest in things he couldn’t see. Also, he never liked Wyatt much. So, with the building half finished and more than £100,000 wasted, work was stopped ten years after it began and never resumed. The structure stood empty and uncompleted for years until a new king, George IV, finally had it pulled down.

Throughout their fractious relationship, Beckford bombarded Wyatt with outraged letters. “What putrid inn, what stinking tavern or pox ridden brothel hides your hoary and glutinous limbs?” ran one typical inquiry. His pet name for Wyatt was “Bagasse” (pimp). Every letter was a screed of rage and inventive insult. Wyatt was, to be sure, maddening. Once he left Fonthill to go to
London, ostensibly on urgent business, but got only three miles, to another property owned by Beckford, where he fell in with another boozy guest. A week later Beckford discovered them there together, insensate and surrounded by empty bottles.

The final cost of Fonthill Abbey is unknown, but in 1801 an informed observer suggested that Beckford had already spent £242,000—enough to build two Crystal Palaces—and the building was less than half done. Beckford moved into the abbey in the summer of 1807 even though it was uncompleted. There was no comfort in it at all. “Sixty fires had to be kept continually burning winter and summer to keep the house dry, let alone warm,” Simon Thurley records in *Lost Buildings of Britain*. Most of the bedrooms were as plain as monastic cells; thirteen had no windows. Beck-ford’s own bedchamber, strikingly austere, contained a single narrow bed.

Wyatt continued to attend intermittently and to drive Beckford to fury with his absences. In early September 1813, just after his sixty-seventh birthday, Wyatt was riding back to London from Gloucestershire with a client when his carriage overturned and he was dashed against the wall, striking his head a fatal blow. He died more or less instantly, leaving his widow penniless.
Just at this time, sugar prices went into a depression and Beckford ended up uncomfortably exposed to the downside of capitalism. By 1823, he was so strapped for funds that he was forced to sell Fonthill. It was bought for £300,000 by an eccentric character, John Farquhar, who had been born in rural Scotland but went to India as a young man and made a fortune manufacturing gunpowder. Returning to England in 1814, Farquhar settled in London in a fine house on Portman Square, which he conspicuously neglected. He conspicuously neglected himself, too—to such an extent that on his walks through the neighborhood he was sometimes stopped and questioned as a suspicious vagrant. After buying Fonthill, he hardly ever visited it. He was, however, in residence on the most spectacular day in Fonthill’s brief existence, just before Christmas 1825, when the tower emitted a sustained groan, then collapsed for a third and final time. A servant was blown thirty feet down a corridor by the rush of air, but miraculously neither he nor anyone else was injured. About a third of the house lay under the heaped wreckage of the tower, and would never be habitable again. Farquhar was remarkably equable about his misfortune and merely remarked that this greatly simplified the care of the place. He died the following year, immensely rich but intestate, and none of his bickering relatives would take on the house. What remained of it was torn down
and cleared away not long after.

Beckford, meanwhile, took his £300,000 and retired to Bath, where he built a 154-foot tower in a restrained classical style. Called the Lansdown Tower, it was erected with good materials and prudent care, and still stands.

II

Fonthill marked the summit not only of ambition and folly in the domestic realm but also of discomfort. A curious inverse relationship had arisen, it seems, between the amount of effort and expense that went into a house and the extent to which it was actually habitable. The great age of housebuilding brought new levels of elegance and grandeur to private life in Britain, but almost nothing in the way of softness, warmth, and convenience.

Those homely attributes would be the creation of a new type of person who had scarcely existed a generation or so before: the middle class professional. There had always been people of middling rank, of course, but as a distinct entity and force to be reckoned with, the middle class was an eighteenth-century phenomenon. The term
The invention of the middle class injected new levels of demand into society. Suddenly there were swarms of people with splendid town houses that all needed furnishing, and just as suddenly the world was full of desirable objects with which to fill them. Carpets, mirrors, curtains, upholstered and embroidered furniture, and a hundred things more that were rarely found in homes before 1750 now became commonplace.

The growth of empire and of overseas business interests had a dramatic effect, too, often in unexpected ways. Take wood. When Britain was an isolated island nation, it had essentially just one wood for furniture making: oak. Oak is a noble material, solid, long-lasting, literally hard as iron, but it is really only suitable for dense, blocky furniture—trunks, beds, heavy tables, and
the like. But the development of the British navy and the spread of Britain’s commercial interests meant that woods of many types—walnut from Virginia, tulipwood from the Carolinas, teak from Asia—became available, and these changed everything within the home, including how people sat and conversed and entertained.

The most prized wood of all was mahogany from the Caribbean. Mahogany was lustrous, warp-resistant, and sublimely accommodating. It could be carved and fretted into the delicate shapes that perfectly suited the exuberance of rococo, yet was strong enough to be a piece of furniture. No wood used in England before had had these characteristics: suddenly furniture had a sculptural quality. The central uprights of the chairs—the splats—could be worked in a way that was wondrous to a people who had never seen anything less clunky than a Windsor chair. The legs had flowing curves and luscious feet; the arms swept along to terminal volutes that were a pleasure to grasp and a delight to behold. Every chair—indeed, every built thing in the house—seemed suddenly to have elegance and style and fluidity.

Mahogany would have been nothing like as esteemed a wood as it was had it not been for one other magical new material, from the other side of the Earth, that gave it the most splendid finish: shellac. Shellac is a hard resinous
secretion from the Indian lac beetle. Lac beetles emerge in swarms in parts of India at certain times of the year, and their secretions make varnish that is odorless, nontoxic, brilliantly shiny, and highly resistant to scratches and fading. It doesn’t attract dust while wet, and it dries in minutes. Even now, in an age of chemistry, shellac has scores of applications against which synthetic products cannot compete. When you go bowling, it is shellac that gives the alleys their peerless sheen, for instance.

New woods and varnishes dramatically broadened the forms that furniture could take, but something else was needed—a new system of manufacture—to produce the volumes of quality furniture necessary to satisfy the endless demand. Where traditional designers like Robert Adam made a new design for each commission, furniture makers now realized that it was far more cost-effective to make lots of furniture from a single design. They began to operate a factory system on a large scale, cranking out pieces that were cut from templates, then assembled and finished by teams of specialists. The age of mass manufacture had been born.

There is a certain irony in the thought that the people who did the most to establish mass manufacturing techniques were the ones we now most revere for their
craftsmanship, and of no one is that more true than a shadowy furniture maker from the north of England named Thomas Chippendale. His influence was enormous. He was the first commoner for whom a furniture style was named; before him, the names faithfully recalled monarchies: Tudor, Elizabethan, Louis XIV, Queen Anne. Yet we know remarkably little about him. We have no idea, for instance, what he looked like. Except that he was born and grew up in the market town of Otley, on the edge of the Yorkshire dales, nothing at all is known of his early life. His first appearance in the written record is in 1748, when he arrives in London, already aged thirty, and sets up as a new type of maker and purveyor of household furnishings known as an upholsterer.

That was an ambitious thing to do, for upholsters’ businesses tended to be complicated and extensive. One of the most successful, George Seddon, employed four hundred workmen—carvers, gilders, joiners, makers of mirrors and brass, and so on. Chippendale did not operate on quite that scale, but he employed forty or fifty men, and his premises covered two frontages at 60–62 St. Martin’s Lane, just around the corner from the modern Trafalgar Square (though that wouldn’t exist for another eighty years). He also provided an extremely complete service, making and selling chairs, occasional tables,
dressing tables, writing tables, card tables, bookcases, bureaus, mirrors, clock cases, candelabra, candle stands, musicstands, sconces, commodes, and an exotic new contrivance that he called a “sopha.” Sofas were daring, even titillating, because they resembled beds and so hinted at salacious repose. The firm also stocked wallpaper and carpets, and undertook repairs, furniture removals, and even funerals.

Thomas Chippendale made indisputably fine furniture, but so did lots of others. St. Martin’s Lane alone had thirty furniture makers in the eighteenth century, and hundreds more were scattered across London and throughout the country. The reason we all know Chippendale’s name today is that in 1754 he did something quite audacious. He issued a book of designs called The Gentleman and Cabinet-Maker’s Director, containing 160 plates. Architects had been doing this sort of thing for nearly two hundred years, but nobody had thought to do it for furniture. The drawings were unexpectedly beguiling. Instead of being flat, two-dimensional templates, as was standard, they were perspective drawings, full of shadow and sheen. The prospective purchaser could immediately visualize how these handsome and desirable objects would look in his own home.
It would be misleading to call Chippendale’s book a sensation, because only 308 copies were sold, but the purchasers included forty-nine members of the aristocracy, which made it disproportionately influential. It was also snapped up by other furniture makers and craftsmen, raising another point of oddness—that Chippendale was openly inviting his competitors to make use of his designs for their own commercial purposes. This helped ensure Chippendale’s posterity, but didn’t do much for his immediate fortunes since potential clients could now get Chippendale furniture made more cheaply by any reasonably skilled joiner. It also meant two centuries of difficulty for furniture historians in determining which pieces of furniture are genuine Chippendales and which are copies made using his book. Even if a piece is a “genuine” Chippendale, it doesn’t mean that Thomas Chippendale ever touched it or was even aware of its existence. It doesn’t even necessarily mean that he designed it. No one knows how much talent he brought in, or whether the designs in his books are in fact from his own hand. A genuine Chippendale simply means that it came from his workshop.

Such is the Chippendale aura, however, that it needn’t even have been as close to him as that. In 1756 in colonial Boston, a furniture maker named
John Welch, using a Chippendale pattern as a guide, made a mahogany desk that he sold to a man named Dublois. The desk stayed in the Dublois family for 250 years. In 2007, Dublois’s descendants put it up for auction with Sotheby’s in New York. Though Thomas Chippendale had no direct connection to it, it sold for just under $3.3 million.

Inspired by Chippendale’s success, other English furniture makers issued pattern books of their own. George Hepplewhite’s *Cabinet-Maker and Upholsterer’s Guide* was published in 1788, and Thomas Sheraton followed with the *Cabinet-Maker and Upholsterer’s Drawing-Book*, issued in installments between 1791 and 1794. Sheraton’s book had more than twice as many subscribers as Chippendale’s and was translated into German, a distinction not accorded Chippendale’s own volume. Hepplewhite and Sheraton became particularly popular in America.

Although any piece of furniture directly associated with any of the three is today worth a fortune, they were more admired than celebrated in their own lifetimes, and at times not even all that admired. Chippendale’s fortunes slipped first. He was an outstanding furniture maker but hopeless at running a business, a deficiency that became acutely evident upon the death of his business partner,
James Rannie, in 1766. Rannie was the brains of the operation; without him, Chippendale lurched from crisis to crisis for the rest of his life. All this was painfully ironic, for as he struggled to pay his men and keep himself out of a debtor’s cell, Chippendale was producing items of the highest quality for some of England’s richest households, and working closely with the leading architects and designers—Robert Adam, James Wyatt, Sir William Chambers, and others. Yet his personal trajectory was relentlessly downward.

It was not an easy age in which to do business. Customers were routinely slow in paying. Chippendale had to threaten David Garrick, the actor and impresario, with legal action for chronic unpaid bills, and stopped work at Nostell Priory, a stately home in Yorkshire, when the debt there reached £6,838—a whopping liability. “I have not a single guinea to pay my men with tomorrow,” he wrote in despair at one point. It is clear that Chippendale spent much of his life in a froth of anxiety, scarcely for a moment enjoying any sense of security at all. At his death in 1779, his personal worth had sunk to just £28 2s 9d—not enough to buy a modest piece of ormolu from his own showrooms. The firm struggled on under the directorship of his son but finally succumbed to bankruptcy in 1804.
When Chippendale died, the world barely noticed. No obituary appeared in any paper. Fourteen years after his death, Sheraton wrote of Chippendale’s designs that “they are now wholly antiquated and laid aside.” By the late 1800s, Chippendale’s reputation had fallen so low that the first edition of the *Dictionary of National Biography* gave him just one paragraph—far less than it gave Sheraton or Hepplewhite—and much of that was critical and a good deal of it was wrong. The author was so little absorbed by the facts of Chippendale’s life that he had him coming from Worcestershire, not Yorkshire.

Sheraton (1751–1806) and Hepplewhite (1727?–1786) could hardly boast of magnificent success themselves. Hepplewhite’s shop was in a down-at-heel district, Cripplegate, and his identity sufficiently obscure that his contemporaries referred to him variously as Kepplewhite and Hebblethwaite. Almost nothing is known of his personal life. He had actually been dead for two years by the time his own book of patterns was published. Sheraton’s fate was even more curious. He seems never to have opened a shop, and no piece of furniture that can be attributed to him has ever been found. He may never have made any, but acted merely as a draftsman and designer. Though his book sold well, it appears not to have enriched him, for he had to supplement his income by teaching drawing and perspective. At some point he
gave up furniture design, trained as a minister for a nonconformist sect known as the Narrow Baptists, and became essentially a street-corner preacher. He died in squalor, “among dirt and bugs,” in London in 1806, leaving a wife and two children.

As furniture makers, Chippendale and his contemporaries were masters without any doubt, but they enjoyed one special advantage that can never be replicated: the use of the finest furniture wood that has ever existed, a species of mahogany called *Swietenia mahogani*. Found only on parts of Cuba and Hispaniola (the island today shared by Haiti and the Dominican Republic) in the Caribbean, *Swietenia mahogani* has never been matched for richness, elegance, and utility. Such was the demand for it that it was entirely used up—irremediably extinct—within just fifty years of its discovery. Some two hundred other species of mahogany exist in the world, and most are very good woods, but they have nothing like the richness and smooth workability of the departed *S. mahogani*. The world may one day produce better chairmakers than Chippendale and his peers, but it will never produce finer chairs.

Curiously, no one at all appreciated this for the longest time. Many Chippendale chairs and other pieces, now considered priceless, spent a century or more being
casually knocked about in the servants’ quarters before they were rediscovered and returned to the main house in the Edwardian era. Some six hundred pieces of Chippendale furniture have now been confirmed altogether. Others, handed down or disposed of in estate sales, could easily be sitting unregarded in some country cottage or suburban bungalow, more valuable than the houses that contain them.

III

If we were to go back in time to a house in Chippendale’s day, one difference that would immediately strike us would be that chairs and other items of furniture were generally pushed up against the walls, giving every room the aspect of a waiting room. Chairs or tables in the middle of the room would have looked as out of place to Georgians as a wardrobe left in the middle of a room would look to us today. (One reason for pushing them aside was to make it easier to walk through rooms without tripping over furniture in the dark.) Because they were kept against the wall, the backs of early upholstered chairs and settees were often left unfinished, just as we leave bare the backs of chests and wardrobes today.
When one had visitors, the custom was to bring an appropriate number of chairs forward and arrange them in a circle or semicircle, rather like storytime in an elementary school. This had the inevitable effect of making nearly all conversations strained and artificial. Horace Walpole, after sitting for four and a half hours in an agonizing circle of fatuous conversation, declared: “We wore out the Wind and the Weather, the Opera and the Play . . . and every topic that would do in a formal circle.” Yet when daring hostesses tried to introduce spontaneity by arranging chairs into more intimate clusters of threes and fours, many felt the result was tantamount to pandemonium, and more than a few could never get used to the idea of conversations taking place behind their backs.

The one problem with the chairs of the age was that they weren’t terribly comfortable. The obvious solution was to pad them, but that proved more difficult than one might have thought, because few craftsmen had all the skills necessary to make a good padded chair. Manufacturers struggled to get square edges where fabric met wood—piping and cording were originally brought in as a way of disguising these inadequacies—and were frequently out of their depth at producing padding that would maintain a permanent domed shape on the seat. Only saddlers could reliably provide the requisite
durability, which is why so much early upholstered furniture was covered in leather. Fabric upholsterers also had the problem that many preindustrial fabrics could be produced only in widths of about twenty inches, creating a need for seams in awkward places. Only after the invention of the flying shuttle by John Kay in 1733 did it become possible to produce fabrics in widths of three feet or so.

Improvements in textile and printing technologies transformed decorative possibilities beyond furniture as well. This was the age that saw the widespread introduction of carpets, wallpapers, and bright fabrics. Paint, too, became available in a range of bright colors for the first time. The upshot is that, by late in the eighteenth century, households were full of features that would have been the wildest indulgences a century before. The modern house—a house such as we would recognize today—had begun to emerge. At last, some fourteen hundred years after the Romans withdrew, taking their hot baths, padded sofas, and central heating with them, the British were rediscovering the novel condition of being congenially situated. They hadn’t entirely mastered comfort yet, but they had certainly discovered an alluring concept. Life, and the expectations that went with it, would never be the same again.
There was, however, one consequence in all this. The advent of comfort in the home, in particular the widespread use of soft furnishings, made furniture much more vulnerable to stains, burns, and other careless abuses. In an effort to save the most valuable furniture from the worst of the risks, a new type of room was created, and it is there, conveniently, that we go next.

* A furlong in horse racing is 220 yards, or one-eighth of a mile, but farming furlongs originally were of no particular length. The word means simply “long furrow.”

* Ayrshires were the creation of Bruce Campbell, inventive second cousin of James Boswell, who was put in charge of the family estate in Scotland only after Boswell himself declined the responsibility, preferring a life of conversation and refined debauchery in London to dairy farming in lowland Scotland. Had Boswell been more dutiful, we would have lost not only his great Life of Johnson but also one of the world’s best breeds of dairy cattle.

* Though the name is now pronounced “Van-bruh” or “Van-burra” (like the terminal diphthong of “Edinburgh” or “Barbara”), it appears to have been pronounced “Van-brook” in his own lifetime. It was frequently so spelled.

* Whig is a shortening of Whiggamore, the name for a group of seventeenth-century Scottish insurgents. Where Whiggamore itself came from is uncertain, as is the question of how it then suggested itself as a suitable name for a group of powerful English aristocrats. It was first applied derisively by the Tories, but embraced with pride by the target group. Exactly the same thing happened with the term Tory.

* In a large house, room numbers are generally notional. It depends on the extent to which you count storerooms, closets, and the like as separate rooms (and also no doubt how carefully one counts). The published numbers for the total rooms at Blenheim range from 187 to 320—quite a disparity.
It was also, come to that, the age of the celebrity craftsman. One such was the great carver Grinling Gibbons, who lived from 1648 to 1721. His interesting Christian name was his mother’s maiden name. He grew up in Holland, of English parents, and came to England in about 1667, after the restoration of Charles II as king. He settled in Deptford, in southeast London, where he made a very basic living carving figureheads for ships. One day in 1671, John Evelyn, the diarist, chanced to pass his workshop and was immediately taken with Gibbons’s skill, personable manner, and possibly good looks. (Gibbons was by all accounts stunningly good-looking.) He encouraged the young man to take on more challenging commissions and introduced him to people of influence, such as Christopher Wren.

Thanks to Evelyn’s support, Gibbons became very successful, but most of his wealth actually came from running a workshop that produced statuary and other stonework. It was Gibbons, it appears, who came up with the idea of depicting British heroes as Roman statesmen, in toga and sandals, and this made his work in stone extremely fashionable. Though he is now widely thought of as the greatest woodcarver in modern times, he was not especially famous for it in his own lifetime. For Blenheim Palace, Gibbons produced £4,000 worth of decorative stonework but only £36 worth of wood carving. Part of the reason his wood carvings are so valued today is that there aren’t very many of them.

Although he is little read now, Walpole was immensely popular in his day for his histories and romances. He was a particularly adept coiner of words. The Oxford English Dictionary credits him with no fewer than 233 coinages. Many, like gloomth, greenth, fluctuable, and betweenity, didn’t take, but a great many others did. Among the terms he invented or otherwise brought into English are airsickness, anteroom, bask, beefy, boulevard, café, cause célèbre, caricature, fairy tale, falsetto, frisson, impresario, malaria, mudbath, nuance, serendipity, somber, souvenir, and, as mentioned a few pages back, comfortable in its modern sense.
Visit Bill Bryson’s official website www.BillBrysonBooks.com to learn more about the author and his books, get news and updates, and sign up for his mailing list.

Connect with Bill Bryson on Facebook: www.facebook.com/BillBrysonBooks